

НЕЛИЧНЫЕ ФОРМЫ ГЛАГОЛА



NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERB

Могилев 2020

*Деривативное электронное издание
на основе печатного издания:*

Неличные формы глагола = Non-finite Forms of the Verb

авт.-сост.: Н. Д. Голякевич, Н. В. Тарасова

Могилев : МГУ имени А. А. Кулешова, 2020. – 168 с.

ISBN 978-985-568-731-4

Пособие состоит из трех разделов, каждый из которых включает изложение общих правил употребления неличных форм глагола в английском языке и упражнений, способствующих эффективному усвоению теоретических знаний, формированию и закреплению навыков и умений владения грамматически правильной английской речью. Пособие может быть использовано для работы в аудитории под руководством преподавателя, а также для самостоятельного изучения практической грамматики английского языка.

Для студентов университетов специальности 1-21 05 06 «Романо-германская филология», а также других специальностей филологического или лингвистического профиля, изучающих английский язык как основной иностранный.

УДК 811.111'36(075.8)

ББК 81.43.21я73

Рекомендовано учебно-методическим объединением по гуманитарному образованию в качестве учебно-методического пособия для студентов учреждений высшего образования, обучающихся по специальности 1-21 05 06 «Романо-германская филология»

Неличные формы глагола = Non-finite Forms of the Verb [Электронный ресурс] : учебно-методическое пособие / авт.-сост.: Н. Д. Голякевич, Н. В. Тарасова. – Электрон. данные. – Могилев : МГУ имени А. А. Кулешова, 2020. – Загл. с экрана.

212022, г. Могилев
ул. Космонавтов, 1
тел.: 8-0222-28-31-51
e-mail: alexpzn@mail.ru
<http://www.msu.by>

- © Голякевич Н. Д., Тарасова Н. В., составление, 2020
- © МГУ имени А. А. Кулешова, 2020
- © МГУ имени А. А. Кулешова, электронное издание, 2020

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Пособие «Неличные формы глагола = Non-finite Forms of the Verb» предназначено для студентов специальности 1-21 05 06 «Романо-германская филология», но может использоваться в учебном процессе при преподавании английского языка как иностранного и для других специальностей филологического или лингвистического профиля.

Содержание пособия соответствует требованиям образовательного стандарта высшего образования ОСВО 1-21 05 06-2018, утвержденного и введенного в действие постановлением Министерства образования Республики Беларусь № 124 от 22 декабря 2018 и учебного плана по специальности 1-21 05 06 «Романо-германская филология» (утвержден 31.08.2018, регистрационный № ИН-16).

Пособие состоит из трех разделов: «The Infinitive», «The Participle», «The Gerund». Каждый раздел включает изложение правил употребления неличных форм глагола в английском языке и комплекс упражнений на закрепление усвоенного грамматического материала. Предлагаемые задания различаются степенью трудности и разнообразием. Содержание и характер заданий определяются их основным назначением – способствовать наиболее эффективному усвоению всего многообразия грамматических форм и конструкций английского языка, формированию и закреплению навыков и умений владения грамматически правильной английской речью.

Пособие «Неличные формы глагола = Non-finite Forms of the Verb» подготовлено и апробировано в учебном процессе на кафедре теоретической и прикладной лингвистики Могилевского государственного университета имени А. А. Кулешова. Весь грамматический материал, все задания и упражнения, включенные в пособие, прошли апробацию в течение пяти последних лет в виртуальной образовательной среде MOODLE (Modular Object-Oriented Dynamic Learning Environment) при преподавании практической грамматики английского языка как основного иностранного студентам 2 курса факультета иностранных языков специальности 1-21 05 06 «Романо-германская филология». Пособие может быть использовано как для работы в аудитории под руководством преподавателя, так и для самостоятельного изучения практической грамматики английского языка.

Авторы выражают искреннюю признательность рецензенту пособия – кандидату филологических наук, доценту А. Р. Пайкиной за высказанные замечания и пожелания.

VERBALS

The verb has finite and non-finite forms. Non-finite forms are also called verbals. There are four verbals in English: the infinitive, the gerund, the participle (participle I and participle II). They differ from finite forms in that they lack some grammatical categories that finite verbs have: they have no category of person, number, tense and mood, thus they cannot be used alone as the predicate of the sentence.

The double nature of the verbals

The verbals have much in common:

They all combine the characteristics of the verb with those of some nominal part of speech (either the noun or the adjective or the adverb). That's why grammarians usually speak of their double nature.

The verbal characteristics of the non-finite verb forms

I. Similar to a verb the verbals possess the morphological categories of voice (with transitive verbs), perfect and aspect.

II. All verbals have the combinability of the verb, that is, they may combine with nouns, pronouns and adverbs in the same way as finite verbs.

THE INFINITIVE

The double nature of the infinitive

The infinitive is a non-finite verb form which names a process in a most general way. The infinitive is the initial form of the verb, that is why it represents the verb in the dictionaries.

The formal marker of the infinitive is the particle *to* (to see). In the negative form the particle *not* is used before the infinitive (not to see).

The Infinitive has a double nature: it combines the features of the verb with those of the noun.

The nominal character of the infinitive manifests itself in the syntactical functions of the infinitive which are similar to those of the noun, such as:

1) the subject of the sentence

e.g. It is useful to know how to drive.

To be treated rudely is unpleasant.

2) a predicative

e.g. The trouble was to get any money from her father.

Her ambition is to become a doctor.

3) an object

e.g. I forgot to mail the letter.

She wishes to come with us.

The verbal character of the infinitive is manifested in

1) its syntactical features

2) its morphological features.

The syntactical features of the infinitive are manifested in its combinability:

1) The infinitive can take an object in the same way as the corresponding finite verb:

e.g. To save money now seems impossible.

2) like a finite verb the infinitive can be modified by an adverbial:

e.g. He was not one to think rapidly.

To drive fast is not safe.

The morphological features of the infinitive

The morphological features are manifested in the morphological categories of the infinitive which are three in number:

1) the category of aspect (formed by the opposition “Common aspect – Continuous aspect”);

2) in case of transitive verbs, the category of voice (formed by the opposition “Active voice – Passive voice”);

3) the category of perfect (formed by the opposition “Perfect – Non-perfect”).

Perfect	Voice		Active	Passive
	Aspect			
Non-Perfect	Common		to run to translate	— to be translated
	Continuous		to be running to be translating	—
Perfect	Common		to have run to have translated	— to have been translated
	Continuous		to have been running to have been translating	— —

The category of aspect and voice

The categories of aspect and voice of the infinitive have the same meaning as in the corresponding finite verb forms. Thus the infinitive in the com-

mon aspect does not define the character of the action while the infinitive in the continuous aspect expresses a progressive (continuous) action.

e.g. He is said to write children's books.

He is said to be writing a new book.

The active infinitive denotes an action directed from the subject to the object while the passive infinitive denotes an action directed to the subject (from the object if there is any).

e.g. She wanted to love and to be loved.

Women like to be admired.

The perfect and non-perfect forms

The perfect and non-perfect forms of the infinitive differ in that a non-perfect form denotes an action simultaneous with (or posterior to) that of the finite verb form, while a perfect infinitive denotes an action prior to that of the finite verb form.

e.g. It is nice to visit them from time to time.

It is nice to have visited them last month.

Exercise 1. Choose the sentences where the forms of the infinitive denote:

1) an action simultaneous with or posterior to the action expressed by the finite verb;

2) an action prior to the action expressed by the finite verb;

3) an action that lasted a certain time before the action expressed by the finite verb.

1. It is very kind of you to have done it for us. 2. I asked Jane to cut sandwiches for all of us. 3. Here's the saucepan to boil water in. 4. I've got a list of foodstuffs to be bought before Charles comes. 5. Granny seems to have been cooking since Father left. 6. She is said to have been taken to hospital. 7. He was told to help his younger sister and unbutton her coat. 8. He smokes a lot and is sure to be ruining his health. 9. She wants to take an English course. 10. I know him to have been an outstanding politician. 11. He seemed to have gained all he wanted. 12. I have been advised to rest. 13. I am quite aware how improbable that sounds but it happens to be the truth. 14. He was believed to be preparing a report on the incident. 15. Two prisoners were thought to have escaped.

Exercise 2. Translate into Russian. Pay attention to the use of the active and passive infinitive.

1. I am happy to have given you this chance. 2. I'm happy to be given this chance. 3. I'm sorry to disturb you. 4. I'm sorry to have been disturbed

as I couldn't finish my talk with her. 5. We are pleased to tell you that your son has got the first prize. 6. We were pleased to be told that our son had got the first prize. 7. She is glad to have read your book. 8. She is glad to have been read your book to as she can't read herself now. 9. Our family will be delighted to visit you next year. 10. We were delighted to be visited by Larry and his family. 11. She is glad to study French. 12. She is glad to have studied French. 13. It is nice to be doing such interesting work. 14. It is nice to have been doing this work for many years.

Exercise 3. Use the infinitive in different forms in the active voice or passive voice.

1. There is no necessity (to pick up) the papers, I'll bring them. 2. He is said (to travel) for a month and he hasn't come back yet. 3. My younger brother hates (to read) but he likes (to read to). 4. What they want is (to have) English twice a week. 5. They are reported (to discuss) it during the conference. 6. He is in the garage and must (to repair) his car. 7. I've got something (to tell) him and he has the right (to tell) what happened to his son. 8. People usually prefer (to treat) but Mother likes (to treat) anybody who comes to see us to something delicious. 9. We expect him (to arrive) in a day or two. 10. She must be lucky (to meet) such a wonderful man and (to marry) him. 11. There are so many trifles (to forget) but (to forget) everything is impossible. 12. I don't want (to sell) my fur-coat but I've got lots of things (to sell) as I don't need them. 13. The boys seem (to play) football since morning. 14. I don't know what she is doing. She may (to sleep) now. 15. All I want is (to find) the right diet (to slim down). 16. I won't have (to spend) the money he gave me though money is supposed (to spend). 17. Teachers like (to ask) students and students hate (to ask). 18. I prefer (to choose) and not (to choose). 19. He thinks that (to attack) your enemy is better than (to attack). 20. The project is (to improve) but there's nobody (to improve) it. 21. Everyone wants (to respect). 22. I have nothing (to hide). 23. By that time there was no one (to speak up). 24. Mr. Greatrex must (to plan) his trip long ago. 25. He is good enough (to give) the first prize. 26. It is useless (to govern) them in the same way. 27. Mum left the washing (to sort out). 28. Dick is said (to spend) all his money while travelling all over the world. 29. Fred seems (to work) in the garden since morning. 30. His younger sister appears (always to complain). 31. The girl pretended (to read) a book and not (to look) at me. 32. I'm sorry (to bother) you in this stupid way. 33. Lady Franklin was horrified at herself, (to ask) his name, (to be told) his name and (to forget) it! 34. Good-bye, Mr. Jackson. Glad (to be)

of service to you. 35. I meant (to ask) you about it long ago, but I had no opportunity. 36. Don't you worry about him, he is sure (to have) a good time at the moment. 37. This man must (to sit) here for about an hour. Who can he (to wait) for? 38. You should (to ask) someone (to help) you (to carry) this heavy box. This might not (to happen). 39. Passing by a radio shop he suddenly remembered (to buy) some tape for his recorder. 40. I'm sorry (to disappoint) you but I didn't mean anything of the kind.

Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the use of the active and passive forms of the infinitive.

1. Моя сестра обрадовалась, когда ее пригласили на день рождения. 2. Я не люблю вмешиваться в чужие дела. 3. Мне пришлось редактировать статью, которую должны опубликовать в ближайшее время. 4. Ничего не поделаешь. Придется принять их предложение. 5. Девочка любила, когда ее целовали перед сном. 6. Они были рады помочь родным в беде. 7. Билл ожидает, что его встретят в аэропорту и отвезут в гостиницу. 8. Не выношу, когда над кем-то насмехаются. 9. Ему совершенно нечего делать. 10. Мне доставляет радость делать Вам приятные подарки. А Вам приятно, когда Вам делают подарки? 11. Он сделал вид, что не узнал нас, и прошел мимо. 12. Работу следует завершить к 7 часам. 13. Давайте послушаем последние известия. 14. Когда я был ребенком, меня заставляли проветривать комнату перед сном. 15. Я хочу, чтобы мне сказали правду. 16. Мэгги пожалела, что не предупредила родителей о том, что задерживается. 17. Этот танец заставил его вспомнить молодость. 18. Не может быть, чтобы он все еще сидел в читальном зале. Наверное он уже ушел. 19. Я хочу, чтобы мне доверяли. 20. Дети любят, когда им читают вслух. 21. Что заставляет его так думать? 22. Почему вы позволяете читать ему во время еды? 23. Давайте не будем говорить никому о том, что произошло. 24. Я была довольна, что посмотрела еще одну пьесу Шекспира. 25. Почему бы вам не навестить его? 26. Это все, что надо сказать, когда мы позвоним им. 27. Должно быть, жюри присудило уже все премии. 28. Филипп планирует вернуться на следующей неделе. 29. Будем рады познакомиться с твоим женихом. 30. Мы ожидали, что Вы придете. 31. Говорят, книга еще на прошлой неделе была распродана. 32. Очень мило с Вашей стороны, что Вы пригласили его погостить у вас. 33. Сообщают, что вчера был ограблен банк и преступников, к счастью, поймали. 34. Мне нечего Вам ответить. Я чувствую, что виноват. 35. У тебя два варианта: принять их у себя или поехать к ним.

The use of the infinitive without the particle “to”

The so-called bare infinitive (the infinitive without the particle *to*) is used:

1. After the auxiliary verb of the Present, Past or Future Indefinite.

e.g. Does he like playing football?

He didn't like the party.

2. After the modal verbs *can (could)*, *dare*, *may (might)*, *must*, *needn't*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, *would* (except the modal verbs *ought to*, *to be to*, *to have to*).

e.g. I couldn't convince him to accept your offer.

You must do it right now.

3. After verbs of sense perception: *to feel*, *to hear*, *to watch*, *to see*, *to notice*, etc.

e.g. They saw the accident happen.

I didn't hear you come in.

Note:

1) The verb *to be* after the verb *to feel* is used with the particle *to*.

e.g. She felt his hands to be hot.

2) If the verbs of sense perception are used *in the passive voice*, they are followed by a *to-infinitive*.

e.g. She was seen to go out.

4. After the verbs of inducement and permission: *to let*, *to make*, *to have*.

e.g. I made him take the medicine.

Please, have someone lay the table.

The verb *to help* may be followed by both a *to-infinitive* and a bare infinitive (the latter case is more typical of American English).

e.g. He helped me (to) carry my bag.

Note:

The *passive form* of the verb *to make* is followed by a *to-infinitive*.

e.g. She was made to pay the money back.

5. After modal phrases: *had better ('d better)*, *would rather ('d rather)*, *would sooner ('d sooner)*.

e.g. You 'd better not go to work today.

He 'd sooner die than marry her.

I 'd rather go by car.

6. After phrases with *but*, *cannot but (can't but)*, *nothing but*.

e.g. I cannot but agree.

She does nothing but grumble.

7. In sentences beginning with *why not ...*

e.g. Why not ask Tom about it?

Why not tell her the truth?

8. If two infinitives are connected by the conjunctions *and*, *or*, *except*, *than* the conjunction is followed by a bare infinitive. The conjunctions *except* and *than* may be followed by both bare and to-infinitives.

e.g. I intend to sit in the garden and write letters.

Do you want to have lunch now or wait till later?

It's easier to persuade people than (to) force them.

We had nothing to do except (to) look at the posters.

Exercise 1. Insert the infinitive. Think whether a bare infinitive or a to-infinitive is necessary.

1. He made me (to do) it all over again. 2. She can (to sing) quite well. 3. He will be able (to swim) very soon. 4. I used (to live) in a caravan. 5. You ought (to go) today. It may (to rain) tomorrow. 6. You needn't (to say) anything. Just nod your head and he will (to understand). 7. I want (to see) the house where our president was born. 8. He made her (to repeat) the message. 9. May I (to use) your phone? 10. You needn't (to ask) for permission; you can (to use) it whenever you like. 11. If you want (to get) there before dark you should (to start) at once. 12. I couldn't (to remember) his address. 13. You'll be able (to do) it yourself when you are older. 14. Would you like (to go) now or shall we (to wait) till the end? 15. They won't let us (to leave) the Customs shed till our luggage has been examined. 16. How dare you (to open) my letters! 17. He didn't dare (to argue) with his boss. 18. I used (to smoke) forty cigarettes a day. 19. Will you help me (to move) the bookcase? 20. Susan would sooner (to miss) her classes than (to refuse) to go to a disco. 21. He wouldn't let my baby (to play) with his gold watch. 22. They refused (to accept) the bribe. 23. He is expected (to arrive) in a few days. 24. Mr. Tulip, a keen gardener, was seen (to be planting) some flowers in the back garden. 25. Please let me (to know) your decision as soon as possible. 26. He made us (to wait) for hours. 27. Could you (to tell) me the time, please? 28. You could (to have done) it long ago. 29. We must (to send) him a telegram. 30. I let him (to go) early as he wanted (to meet) his wife. 31. Where would you like (to have) lunch? 32. You can (to leave) your dog with us if you don't (to want) (to take) him with you. 33. I'd like him (to go) to a university but I can't (to make) him (to go). 34. We miss them a great deal and we are happy that they will (to visit) us next month. 35. The boy felt his mother (to touch) his cheek but he pretended (to be sleeping). 36. Mrs. Cool wants her son (to look after) his younger sister. She is going (to be busy) till Friday. 37. Don't let your children (to swim) in the river when they are alone. 38. Who made you (to stay) here and not (to go away)? 39. The neighbours saw Val (to leave) but didn't

(to tell) Fred about it. 40. You'd better (to phone) your Grandma. She needs your help and there's nobody (to take care of) her. 41. Can't you do anything but (to ask) silly questions?

Exercise 2. Use to before the infinitives where possible.

1. We did everything we could ... make him ... join us. 2. You can't ... make me ... do what I don't want 3. Are you sure you can ... afford ... waste another year? 4. You need ... take more care of yourself. 5. It would be very foolish ... let the child ... have his way. 6. Let the next student ... come in now. 7. We'd rather ... take a train than ... fly. 8. Why not ... go with us? Let's ... have fun! 9. You'd better ... stay in bed not ... make your cold ... get worse. 10. I need a car ... get to my country-house. 11. We heard the postman ... come up to the front door and then we saw him ... slip a thick envelope into the box. 12. He can't but ... admire her beauty and talent. 13. You ought ... have told me all this before. 14. We got them ... rebuild the house. 15. He was seen ... enter the house through the back door. 16. – What made you ... terrorize me? – I was made ... do it. 17. Will you be able ... let your son ... decide his future? 18. Father is willing ... let us ... be independent. 19. I won't have you ... say it behind my back. 20. Ever since Simon came he has been made ... look like a fool. 21. Why not ... buy something new and smashing? 22. There's nothing ... do but ... risk it. 23. She felt her shoes ... pinch. 24. You'd better not ... say anything, I'd rather ... be left alone. 25. I was made ... scrub the pans and pots. 26. I've never seen anyone ... enjoy food so much.

Exercise 3. Translate into English using a bare infinitive.

1. Я бы предпочел присоединиться к вам и поехать за город, чем сидеть в городе в такую погоду. 2. Ты бы лучше готовился к зачету по английскому языку, а не смотрел телевизор с утра до вечера. 3. Он скорее расстанется с ней, чем позволит ей так обращаться с собой. 4. Я чувствую, что он хочет сказать мне что-то важное. 5. Ее соседи видят, что к ней часто приходит какой-то человек. 6. Почему бы не съездить в Париж на выставку? 7. Мне кажется, ничто не может заставить его бросить тебя. 8. Не могу не спорить с тобой. 9. Его теща только и делает, что жалуется на него. Лучше бы она не вмешивалась в их жизнь. 10. Не надо звонить им сейчас. 11. Он заставил меня рассказать ему истории о моей семье. 12. Я слышал, как с шумом закрылась дверь, и обрадовался, что они ушли. 13. Я бы предпочла остаться с вами, если вы не возражаете. 14. Фильм начинается через десять минут. Мне бы лучше поторопиться. 15. Почему бы не позвонить ему сейчас?

The syntactical functions of the infinitive

In the sentence the infinitive may be used in any syntactical function, but that of the predicate; the infinitive can form only part of the predicate. Thus, the infinitive may be used as:

1. a subject;
2. a predicative (part of a compound nominal predicate);
- 2a. part of a predicative;
3. part of a verbal predicate;
4. an object;
5. an attribute;
6. an adverbial modifier;
7. a parenthesis.

The infinitive as subject

As the subject of the sentence the infinitive can either 1) precede the predicate or 2) follow it.

1) To sleep in such a place would be madness.

To understand all is to forgive all.

2) The case when the infinitive-subject follows the predicate is more common in modern English.

It's marvelous to swim on a hot summer day.

In the latter case the sentence begins with the formal introductory subject *it*, which is not translated into Russian. The predicate in such sentences is mostly compound nominal expressed by a link verb and an adjective-predicative or more seldom a noun-predicative.

Exercise 1. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as subject. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. To watch them playing is just a pleasure. 2. To send him a telegram was the only way out. 3. To look after your aged parents is, no doubt, your duty. 4. To leave them alone was most necessary at that moment. 5. To drive fast in such weather is pretty dangerous. 6. To mention his name in her presence was silly of you. 7. To make Ben marry Angela wasn't wise of his parents. 8. To take long walks before going to bed is good for your health. 9. To cry is useless. It never helps. 10. To climb this mountain is a tremendous risk. 11. To know him was one of the two greatest gifts of my life. 12. To accept you in my house is a great pleasure. 13. To compromise appears advisable. 14. To cut down any more trees would be a crime. 15. To lean out of the window is dangerous.

Exercise 2. Make up sentences with a to-infinitive as subject.

1. Criticize them. It is easy. 2. I have a lot of friends. It's nice. 3. I lay awake all night. It was difficult for me. 4. Read the instruction. It's important. 5. You made such a fuss about a trifle. It was very silly. 6. When you use a computer, you'll see that it's very easy. 7. Understanding this rule isn't difficult. 8. Working with a computer is fascinating. 9. You must buy fresh food. It's important. 10. Don't use this ladder. It's dangerous.

Exercise 3. a) Use the infinitives given below as subjects:

to give up, to stop, to say, to forget, to explain, to lose, to know, to repair, to hear, to search, to mention, to look up, to wait, to speak, to take.

1. He went off. ... for him now was a torture. 2. It's difficult for him ... smoking. 3. It was impossible ... the bicycle. 4. ... the map well means to be able to show any country or town on it. 5. It took us twelve days ... the island. 6. ... the past was impossible. 7. It was his habit every August ... his family to the seaside for change of air. 8. ... at this stage would be a great pity. 9. It's such a comfort ... you say so, doctor. 10. It took him half an hour ... the words in the dictionary. 11. At this moment, ... required more effort than she could make. 12. It takes an effort ... weight. 13. It's hardly necessary for me ... how grateful I'm for all you've done. 14. It would be tactless ... the subject. 15. It would be no good ... again.

b) Complete the sentences with the infinitives as subjects.

1. It's interesting 2. It'll take you a fortnight 3. ... was very pleasant. 4. I think it's more comfortable 5. ... is the only thing to do. 6. It usually takes me 7. It's boring 8. ... would be much more useful. 9. It's difficult for her 10. Will it be possible for them ... ? 11. ... isn't an easy matter. 12. How much time did it take you ... ? 13. Is it important for people ... ? 14. ... would be unjust. 15. It's my job 16. ... is not my custom. 17. ... is quite unusual for her. 18. ... was the last thing any man wanted. 18. It's a good idea

Exercise 4. Answer the following questions. Give complete answers.

1. Why is it bad to miss lessons? 2. Why is it sometimes difficult to learn the rules in English? 3. Why is it advisable to learn the rules? 4. Why is it important to master your English? 5. Why is it strange to speak Russian at an English lesson? 6. Why is it a must to speak English at the lesson? 7. Why is it interesting to visit exhibitions? 8. Why is it nice to speak English and be spoken to in English? 9. Why is it a misfortune to fail at your exam?

Exercise 5. Translate into English using an infinitive as subject. Underline the notional subject in the sentences with the introductory “it”.

1. Курить так вредно, но он никак не может бросить. 2. Сколько тебе надо времени, чтобы закончить перевод? 3. Говорить с ней – одно удовольствие. 4. Соблюдение диеты – необходимость, а не каприз. 5. Жениться на ней будет просто несчастьем. 6. Было невыносимо слышать, как они ссорятся каждый вечер. 7. Не помочь ему сейчас было бы неправильным. 8. Встретиться с ними у Браунов – это сюрприз. 9. Бесплезно убеждать его не разводиться с ней. 10. Трудно поверить в то, что он вернулся. 11. Хорошо было бы посоветоваться с отцом. 12. Важно иметь хороших друзей. 13. Не предупредить его об этом было бы нечестно. 14. Мне гораздо приятней дарить подарки, чем получать их. 15. Идти в кино было слишком поздно. 16. С ним приятно иметь дело. 17. Вам понадобится 20 минут, чтобы добраться до вокзала. 18. Научиться писать трудней, чем научиться читать. 19. Важно предупредить их вовремя. 20. Меня очень удивило, когда я увидел его на концерте: он терпеть не может пение. 21. Нырять с моста опасно. 22. Ей доставляло огромное удовольствие, когда ее узнавали на улице. 23. Нам понадобилось немало времени на то, чтобы убедить его, что он не прав. 24. Интересно сходить на эту выставку. 25. Побывать в Брайтоне и не видеть море было очень обидно. 26. Нам было трудно получить эти сведения. 27. Оставить дом и мужа было очень серьезным шагом. 28. Ты не должен даже думать об этом. Говорить о смерти – к несчастью. 29. С Дженис трудно связаться. Она, кажется, висит на телефоне весь вечер. 30. Познать себя – это знать свои достоинства и недостатки.

The infinitive as predicative

In this function the infinitive is part of a compound nominal predicate and follows the link verb *to be* as a rule.

e.g. Her plan is to keep the affair secret.

Not to warn him was to let him down.

The subject of such a compound nominal predicate is generally expressed either 1) by another infinitive or 2) by a noun denoting an action, state or some vague idea or 3) by a clause:

1) To influence a person is to give him one's thoughts.

2) My habit is to get up early.

3) What we want to do is to run away.

Exercise 1. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as predicative. Translate the sentences into Russian. Pay attention to the subject of each sentence and say what it is expressed by.

1. The plan was to test the new equipment and discuss the results. 2. My duty will be to do the shopping and cook meals. 3. Their business is to sell foodstuffs. 4. Her method is to make a child think and find his own solution. 5. The next thing is to find an experienced nurse. 6. What I must do is to have my Volvo fixed as soon as possible. 7. The problem was who to turn to for advice. 8. Their purpose was to find a hotel and stay there. 9. My brother's principle is to do everything himself and never ask for anyone's help. 10. Her habit is to put five lumps of sugar in her tea. 11. His highest ambition was to write a monumental work on art. 12. Dr. Johnson's idea was to turn his native town into a health resort. 13. The job of a reporter is to expose and record. 14. What she failed to do was to rent a flat. 15. His greatest wish was to tell her everything. 16. What he should do is to choose a good career.

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences using the conjunctive words *what, whom, where, how* before an infinitive and an infinitive phrase used as predicative.

Model: The problem was – The problem was *when to finish the test*.

1. The task is 2. The question was 3. Our problem will be
4. The students' difficulty is 5. Everyone's goal is 6. All parents' problem is 7. Freddy's question was 8. My sister's dream is
9. The trouble with you is 10. His aim is

Exercise 3. Make up your own sentences according to the model using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as predicative.

Model: What I want to do is *to visit my old friend*.

What they really wanted to do was *to get married and be happy*.

What I must do is *to hand the message to her*.

What he had to do was *to accept their invitation*.

What she failed to do was *to let the room*.

Exercise 4. a) Use the infinitives given below as predicatives:

to visit, to encourage, to tell, to keep, to try, to go on, to return, to become, to bake, to check, to ask, to offend, to take.

1. My plan for this weekend is ... one of my delicious apple pies. 2. My advice to you is ... a coach tour. 3. My next plan for the holiday is ... Europe. 4. The only thing that could do you best is ... a long rest. 5. His life's ambition

was ... an economist. 6. His duty was ... us some questions on the matter. 7. The last thing I meant was ... you. 8. The only thing she could do was ... the truth. 9. My next plan was ... to the house avoiding Wells if possible. 10. My greatest thing is ... our heads up. 11. My suggestion for you is ... the answers on your own. 12. But for the present the best thing to do was ... him in his studies. 13. There was no water nearby and the only thing was ... to find it somewhere.

b) Use the infinitive as predicative to complete the sentences.

1. Our plan was ... 2. To act like this meant ... 3. The first thing he did was ... 4. The main problem was ... 5. Our next step must be ... 6. What I want is ... 7. Our only chance to see him is ... 8. To ask him a straight question means ... 9. Your next task is ... 10. My advice to her was ... 11. My only wish is ... 12. What she wants now is ... 13. My proposal is ... 14. Her aim is ... 15. What I have come for is ...

Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as predicative.

1. Единственное, что можно сделать, это отправиться к морю. 2. Сказать ему правду значит обрести в нем врага. 3. Их обязанность состоит в том, чтобы присматривать за домом. 4. Главная проблема в их жизни – где заработать деньги. 5. Мой совет – забыть его как можно скорее. 6. Приказ полковника был продвигаться вперед и атаковать противника. 7. Наш план состоял в том, чтобы разыскать его отца. 8. Его хобби – собирать старинные монеты и этикетки. 9. Вопрос в том, как добраться до виллы. 10. Главное было заставить его признать свою вину. 11. Лучшее, что ты сейчас можешь сделать, – это извиниться перед ним. 12. Наш план заключался в том, чтобы закончить строительство дома до наступления дождливой погоды. 13. Моя цель – стать хорошим специалистом в этой области. 14. Первое, что я хочу сделать – это хорошо отдохнуть. 15. Задача была в том, чтобы добраться до места до рассвета. 16. Все, что ей удалось сделать – это узнать номер их телефона. 17. Единственное, что я сейчас хочу – это чтобы меня не беспокоили. 18. Мой план заключался в том, чтобы переехать из Шотландии. 19. Пользоваться телефоном для справок – это экономить время. 20. Единственное, что ему хотелось сделать – это найти место, где можно было бы остановиться на ночь. 21. Следующий пункт моего плана на лето состоит в том, чтобы съездить в Испанию на 2 недели. 22. Первое, что необходимо было сделать – это посоветоваться с врачом. 23. Теперь нам остается только послать объявление в газету. 24. Мой

план на выходные заключается в том, чтобы сходить в театр и посмотреть спектакль, о котором много говорят. 25. Долг каждого человека – беречь природу.

The infinitive as part of a predicative

When the infinitive forms part of a predicative, the other part may be expressed by an adjective.

e.g. The man is hard to deal with.

The question was difficult to answer.

Exercise 1. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as part of a predicative. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. Sociable people are easy to deal with. 2. Sandy is pleasant to talk to. 3. This armchair is very comfortable to sit in. 4. The story was amusing to listen to. 5. His advice was hard to follow. 6. Responsible people are easy to rely on. 7. The cottage is quite convenient to live in. 8. Stubborn people are usually difficult to persuade. 9. Her phone number was impossible to remember. 10. Gold and love affairs are hard to hide. 11. This table is very convenient to work at. 12. The apples were good to eat. 13. She was not easy to discourage. 14. The instructions were hard to follow. 15. George is quick to take offence.

Exercise 2. Match the parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. An interesting job is difficult | a. to sit in. |
| 2. This poem is not easy | b. to look after. |
| 3. The armchair is comfortable | c. to listen to. |
| 4. A good lecturer is pleasant | d. to find. |
| 5. A messy child is very difficult | e. to learn by heart. |
| 6. Severe parents are impossible | f. to buy at the chemist's. |
| 7. Toddlers are amusing | g. to offend. |
| 8. The sick are hard | h. to bring up. |
| 9. Sensitive people are easy | i. to watch. |
| 10. This pain killer is possible | j. to disobey. |

Exercise 3. Change the sentences according to the model.

Model: It is interesting to meet new people.

– New people are interesting to meet.

1. It is simple to solve this problem. 2. It is always funny to listen to him. 3. It is expensive to buy a mink coat. 4. It is difficult to speak to such people.

5. It was difficult to start an engine in such cold weather. 6. It is dangerous to stand on this ladder. 7. It is simple to communicate with people due to Internet. 8. It was unpleasant to watch their quarrel. 9. It is impossible to get a good dinner in our canteen. 10. It is rather difficult to deal with stubborn people. 11. It is dangerous to drive a car in big cities. 12. It is difficult to translate the article. 13. It is easy to make this cake. 14. It is easy to teach him.

Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Ее детям трудно угодить. 2. Его стихи легко учить наизусть. 3. Эти громоздкие формулы невозможно запомнить. 4. Такие яблоки трудно вырастить. 5. Эту сцену было неприятно наблюдать. 6. Его слова трудно было запомнить. 7. Твой рассказ смешно слушать. 8. С моей дочерью трудно спорить. 9. Их визита невозможно избежать. 10. На нее всегда приятно смотреть.

The infinitive as part of a compound verbal predicate

In this function the infinitive occurs in two types of a compound verbal predicate:

1. the compound verbal modal predicate;

2. the compound verbal phasal predicate;

1. As part of a *compound verbal modal predicate* the infinitive follows a modal verb and denotes the action which may be possible, obligatory, desirable, etc.

e.g. You must work harder.

I have to wipe my feet every time I come in.

2. As part of a *compound verbal phasal predicate* the infinitive follows a phasal verb, that is a verb that denotes the beginning, the duration, the repetition or the end of the action expressed by the infinitive (*to begin, to start, to come, to cease, to continue, used to, would, etc.*)

e.g. He began to translate the letter.

We soon came to realize that all was in vain.

Exercise 1. Underline the infinitive used as part of a compound verbal predicate. State the type of the compound verbal predicate: a) modal; b) phasal. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. When I was young I could climb any tree in the forest. 2. She came to realize that he had deceived her. 3. They shouldn't allow parking here; the street is too narrow. 4. Sam had to meet his wife at the port and take her

straight to her parents'. 5. You needn't go to the laundrette round the corner. You can do the laundry at home. 6. It continued to rain all day. 7. Hardly had it ceased to rain when we went out. 8. Jeff has a sore throat. He shouldn't have had too much ice-cream. 9. He used to phone his parents once a month. 10. You might have helped your little sister to carry her bag. 11. You ought to have warned them. 12. He loved jazz music so much that he would go to the jazz club every weekend. 13. They continued to check the calculations as they didn't find the results satisfactory. 14. Grandma must be watering the flowers. 15. He began to telephone her every hour but couldn't reach her. 16. Mr. Jackson used to smoke dozens of cigarettes a day and nobody expected that he would give up smoking.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentences. Use an infinitive as part of a compound verbal predicate.

1. There's no necessity for them to come over and bring their son. (need)
2. I would recommend you to have a talk with your boss about it. (should)
3. When she worked for that big company her job often took her abroad. (used to)
4. Maybe Maria will let us borrow some money from Dick. (may)
5. It's a pity you didn't come to the party last night. (should)
6. My children love watching TV. They sit for hours without saying a word. (will)
7. Probably, they found the show rather dull. (must)
8. Maybe the situation has changed. (may)
9. No doubt they are trying to persuade her. (must)
10. When a girl she often went to the Zoo. (used to)

Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Тебе не следовало откровенничать с ним. Он никогда не умел хранить чужие тайны. 2. Может быть, у него какое-то дело в нашем городе и он приехал сюда на несколько дней. 3. Опять пошел дождь. Придется сидеть весь день дома. Жаль, мы могли бы неплохо провести день за городом. 4. Перед уходом с работы мистер Смит обычно звонил жене. 5. Мне не пришлось ей ничего объяснять. Она все уже знала. 6. Лиззи продолжала умолять сестру не говорить матери об их приходе. Мать могла ее наказать. 7. Вряд ли они помогут нам. Придется занимать деньги у кого-то другого, иначе мы не сможем расплатиться с ним. 8. Постепенно они перестали разговаривать и заснули. 9. Публика стала уходить из театра задолго до конца спектакля. 10. Очевидно, они ждут вас у входа. 11. Вам следовало бы извиниться: вы не правы. 12. Денни обычно сидел и часами смотрел на море.

The infinitive as object

The infinitive used as an object is placed after the predicate and is often expressed by an infinitive phrase though a single infinitive is also possible.

e.g. They decided to divide the profits equally.

She claims to have read his diary.

After a number of verbs that take two objects the first one may be expressed by a noun or pronoun and the second by an infinitive (*to advise, to allow, to ask, to compel, to encourage, to order, to persuade, to recommend, to request, to tell, to teach, etc.*).

e.g. Tell him to phone me.

I asked her to explain everything.

After the verbs *to find, to consider, to believe, to think, to feel, etc.* when used as object, the infinitive may be preceded by the formal introductory object *it*, which is not translated into Russian.

e.g. I found it hard to believe that anyone could be that lazy.

He felt it natural to accept hospitality.

After the verbs *to advise, to ask, to decide, to discover, to discuss, to explain, to find out, to forget, to know, to learn, to remember, to show, to teach, to tell, to understand, to want, to wonder, etc.*, the object may be expressed by a conjunctive infinitive phrase.

e.g. I don't know what to say.

He couldn't decide whether to speak or not.

The infinitive may also be used as an object after some a) predicative adjectives (*anxious, glad, thankful, happy, proud, sorry*), b) statives (*afraid, ashamed*) or c) participles (*astonished, delighted, pleased, surprised*).

e.g. He's still very anxious to see you.

It's an awful photo. I'm ashamed to show it to anyone.

Exercise 1. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as object. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I would strongly advise you not to speak to him like that. 2. Michael was asked to leave Bristol immediately. 3. The doctor compelled the patient to change his diet. 4. Ellen's friends encouraged her to get a new car. 5. I consider it impossible to change your plans. 6. He was trying to persuade her but failed. 7. We'd strongly recommend you to see this film. 8. I find it impossible to take the responsibility upon myself. 9. I told Lizzy not to run round the flower-bed and not to pick the flowers. 10. She taught me to feel and admire nature. 11. I'm extremely sorry to disturb you, my dear. 12. She tried to insist on coming with me, but I finally managed to talk her out of it. 13. I thought

it impolite to smoke a cigar in her presence. 14. He never said a word about what he feared or hoped, or planned to do.

Exercise 2. a) Use the infinitives given below as objects:

to post, to show, to air, to see off, to join, to give, to switch off, to be, to go out, to lock, to give a lift, to retire, to play chess, to begin.

1. I must tell Helen ... the drawing room very well. 2. He promised ... us all of the island. 3. How did you learn ...? – I began ... when I was young and I've been ... ever since. 4. He claims ... an expert on the subject. 5. He decided ... when he reached the age of 60. 6. Don't forget ... the light, when you go out of the room. 7. Oh, no! I completely forgot ... the safe! 8. I propose ... early. 9. I'm sorry I forgot ... your letter. 10. Mike offered ... me ... home, but I refused. 11. He asked me ... his party. 12. I was so afraid ... at night that I asked my cousin to accompany me. 13. He promised ... his son a bicycle as a birthday present. 14. Philip was not sorry ... him

b) Complete the following using the infinitives as objects.

1. He asked ... 2. I'm so glad ... 3. We are awfully sorry ... 4. The doctor advised ... 5. The child is afraid ... 6. Everybody promised ... 7. Would you like ...? 8. Who has allowed you ...? 9. I've decided ... 10. Sorry I've forgotten ... 11. Frank is lucky ... 12. Paul was amused ... 13. The writer was happy ... 14. Nobody told her ... 15. There is a couple of things I want ... 16. Has your mother persuaded you ...?

Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into English using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as object.

1. Прости, я забыл отправить твое письмо. 2. Я предлагаю забыть об этом. 3. Он обещал вернуться в воскресенье. 4. Они постоянно забывают выключать свет. 5. Он сделал вид, что не узнал нас. 6. Он боялся забыть о своем обещании. 7. Вы не забыли выключить телевизор? 8. Я очень хочу побеседовать с ними. 9. Они надеялись найти Тома в бассейне, но его там не было. 10. Он пригласил своих друзей прийти и посмотреть его новую квартиру. 11. Я решил поехать на море вместе с родителями. 12. Я притворился, будто не заметил его смущения, и продолжал говорить. 13. Они решили никогда об этом больше не вспоминать. 14. Мне было досадно, что я забыл поблагодарить их. 15. Где вы научились так хорошо говорить по-английски? 16. Думаю, весьма желательно время от времени писать им. 7. Они попросили меня не останавливаться на подробностях. 8. Попытайся убедить ее не поступать в аспирантуру в этом году. 19. Я бы настоятельно советовал Вам побывать на этой

ярмарке. 20. Старшая сестра научила ее играть этот концерт. 21. Он считал необходимым сообщить им о переговорах заранее. 22. Не забудь отнести костюм в химчистку! 23. Он с сожалением сообщил им, что приехать не может. 24. Она отказалась принять участие в соревнованиях. 25. Я планирую устроить вечеринку. 26. Он угрожал, что расскажет обо всем моим родителям. 27. Марк не любил, когда ему напоминали о том случае. 28. Она была счастлива, что ей дали новую работу.

The infinitive as attribute

As an attribute both the active and the passive infinitives are possible. If the subject of the sentence denotes the person who has to do the action expressed by the infinitive-attribute, the attribute is expressed by an active infinitive.

e.g. I have a friend to rely upon.

As an attribute the infinitive can modify:

a) both abstract and concrete nouns

e.g. I have an excuse to do.

b) the noun-substitute *one*

e.g. He is the one to be trusted.

c) compound indefinite and universal pronouns in *-body, -thing, -one*

e.g. We had nothing to lose.

d) ordinal numerals (especially *the first*)

e.g. Hob is always the last to come to the lesson and the first to leave.

e) substantivised adjectives *next, last, much, little, more, enough*.

e.g. I've got no more to add.

The infinitive-attribute may be expressed by a conjunctive infinitive phrase.

e.g. I have no idea who to address.

I have no idea how to find the answer.

Exercise 1. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as attribute and the word modified. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. She is the right woman to marry. 2. Laura was the last to arrive though nobody expected her to come. 3. We have got no wish to support them as they are not the people to be trusted. 4. You'd better find somebody to walk your dog. 5. Brian is not the person to act rapidly. 6. I've got so much to tell you. 7. It is not a question to be discussed now. 8. Lyle has nobody to pick him up at the station. 9. This is just the time to pay them a return visit. 10. The man made me a sign to approach him and help him with the load. 11. There

is a time to fish and a time to dry nets. 12. Alec was not an easy man to give presents to. 13. I expect there'll be a lot to put up with. 14. John had nothing more to show him. 15. George was a tempting person to gossip about.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentences using a passive infinitive as attribute.

Model: A lot of things should be done before we leave. – There are a lot of things to be done before we leave.

1. A lot of papers should be typed before the boss comes. 2. Some problems should be solved before we sign an agreement. 3. A couple of chairs should be fetched. 4. A lot of things should be packed before he arrives. 5. Three students should be asked at the seminar. 6. Three tapes should be listened to before we start a class. 7. Lots of rules should be revised before we have a test. 8. Five children should be examined by a doctor. 9. A lot of pictures should be looked through before we find the one we need. 10. Two more people should be invited.

Exercise 3. a) Paraphrase the following so as to use the infinitives as attributes.

1. There was nothing that might keep him at home that night, and he gladly accepted the invitation. 2. This is a mineral that can be found only in this part of the country. 3. There are so many letters that must be answered. 4. She had no one in whom she could confide. 5. Can you entrust the work to anyone? 6. Here's the list of medicines which are not to be sold without a prescription. 7. He's a man one can trust. 8. We didn't know the way to the station and there wasn't anyone who we could ask. 9. It isn't a thing you can joke about. It's a serious matter. 10. He'll always find something that makes him laugh at. 11. They decided that it was a nice little town where they could live quietly for a while. 12. He's not a man who you can easily frighten. 13. There's nothing we might discuss now. Everything is settled. 14. He was the first man who guessed what George was driving at. 15. No doubt it was the best time when he could find them all at home. 16. He gave me a passage which I was to look through. 17. The next patient who was examined was my brother.

b) 1. He is the only one among us who gave up smoking. 2. I was the first who noticed the mistake. 3. She was the first who broke the silence. 4. I am the next who will be interviewed. 5. Jane was the second who got an excellent mark. 6. He complained that he was always the last who was informed. 7. I wonder who spoke at the meeting first. 8. Who was the last person who

saw the man alive? 9. He found that he was the only one who realized the danger. 10. His horse came in the race the last. 11. John was the only one who jumped with a parachute. 12. Andrew was the third who went in for the interview. 13. Paul was the last who greeted him. 14. They were the first people who arrived at the scene of the accident.

c) Complete the following using the infinitives as attributes.

1. He was always the first 2. We have nothing 3. This is the chance 4. He isn't a man 5. She made an attempt 6. Is there anybody ...? 7. He always finds something 8. This is the information 9. He spoke of his wish 10. You see I have no time 11. He resisted the temptation 12. He regretted his inability 13. Again she was the last 14. I have a right

Exercise 4. Paraphrase the sentences using a noun instead of the verb in bold type with the infinitive as attribute. Make all the necessary changes.

Model: I don't **want** to change my mind. – I have no desire to change my mind.

1. We were surprised that he **refused** to go there. 2. I can't remember whether you **promised** to lend him some money. 3. The trainer **instructed** the cyclists to examine their bicycles before the competition. 4. The manager **required** that we should check the results immediately and we had to obey. 5. I told him that I was firmly **determined** to find out the truth. 6. She **desired** to adopt the child and nothing could make her refuse to do it. 7. He **consented** to fill up the vacancy. 8. We didn't know that they **planned** to leave soon. 9. They didn't **want** to attend his lecture. 10. They **demand** to be regularly informed, and you'll have to comply with it. 11. The group was **allowed** to visit the Memorial flat. 12. They repeatedly **attempted** to stage the experiment. 13. I don't **intend** to do anything about it. 14. The matter was that he **didn't know** what to start with. 15. He **offered** to give us a lift but we refused. 16. He was **permitted** to leave the house.

Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as attribute.

1. Он первым предложил ей помощь. 2. Ничего не поделаешь. Придется все рассказать им, и мне есть, что сказать этой семье. 3. Когда-нибудь у тебя будет жена, дети, о которых тебе придется заботиться. 4. У него есть кто-нибудь, с кем он может поделиться своими проблемами? 5. Я последняя узнала о его приезде. 6. Намерение Сэнди уехать из

Кардиффа трудно было понять. У нее было все для счастья. 7. Нам дали перечень книг, которые необходимо было прочесть к экзамену. 8. Они первыми приехали, следовательно, первыми и уйдут. 9. На этот факт нужно обратить внимание. 10. Его всегда спрашивают последним, и он обычно говорит то, на что надо обратить внимание. 11. Это не тот человек, с которым стоит иметь дело. 12. Это было неподходящее время для перерыва. 13. Не имею понятия, куда поступать и как готовиться к экзаменам. 14. Невозможно было найти способ, чтобы заставить его быть откровенным со мной. 15. У отца всегда много дел и у него совершенно нет времени помогать матери по дому. 16. С ней было приятно общаться. 17. Это не тот человек, с которым можно поговорить на эту тему. 18. Нечего бояться: вы не виноваты. 19. Его предложение пригласить Тома было встречено с одобрением. 20. У меня нет времени навестить вас сегодня. 21. Здесь негде сесть. 22. В детстве он мечтал стать космонавтом.

The infinitive as adverbial modifier

The infinitive may be used as different adverbial modifiers:

a) as *an adverbial modifier of purpose*

e.g. He stopped to read a wall newspaper.

The same idea can be expressed by using the conjunctions *in order to* and *so as*.

e.g. We shouted in order (so as) to warn everyone of the danger.

In negative sentences *in order not to* and *so as not to* are usually used as the infinitive alone may not be correct.

e.g. I'm going to start now in order not to miss the beginning of the concert.

b) as *an adverbial modifier of result or consequence*. It chiefly occurs after adjectives or adverbs modified by *enough* or *too*.

e.g. You are too young to understand.

In this function the infinitive is also used after adjectives modified by *so* (*so + adjective + as*) and nouns modified by *such* (*such + noun + as*).

e.g. He was so foolish as to leave his car unlocked.

She is not such a fool as to think you innocent.

c) as *an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances* the infinitive denotes an action that either takes place at the same time as the action of the predicate or after it. It can be transformed into a homogeneous predicate and is translated into Russian by the finite verb form as a homogeneous predicate joined by the conjunction *и* or sometimes *но*.

e.g. He returned to the house to learn that his son had just left.

In this function the infinitive is often found after the verb-predicate expressed by a verb of motion (*to come, to run, to rush, to leave, to return, to drive away, to get to some place, to arrive*).

e.g. I returned from Europe to find my house in ruins.

Besides the infinitive itself is usually expressed by the following verbs: verbs denoting discovery (*to find, to discover*), verbs of sense perception (*to see, to hear, to feel*), verbs denoting a change in a state or position (*to appear, to disappear, to emerge, to die, to sink*).

e.g. She hurried to the house only to find that it was empty.

He turned to see a policeman.

He survived the crash only to die in the desert.

In this function the infinitive is often preceded by the adverb *only*.

d) as *an adverbial modifier of condition*

e.g. To hear him talk, you would think he was a celebrity. (= if you heard him talk...)

She would be unhappy to live alone. (= if she lived alone)

e) as *an adverbial modifier of time*

e.g. She was upset to hear that her sister was ill. (= She was upset when she heard...)

I am terrified to see him. (= when I see him).

f) as *an adverbial modifier of exception* the infinitive is used after the prepositions *but* or *except*. In this case *only a bare infinitive* is used.

e.g. These women have nothing to do but talk.

There was nothing to do except tell him the truth.

In this function the infinitive occurs only in negative and interrogative sentences.

e.g. What could I do but smile?

g) as *an adverbial modifier of comparison or manner* the infinitive is introduced by the conjunctions *as if, as though* or *than*.

e.g. Her lips moved as if to warn him.

He ran his hand through his hair as though to tidy it.

When the adverbial modifier of comparison refers to the predicate group containing adjectives or adverbs in the comparative degree, the infinitive is introduced by the conjunction *than*.

e.g. You ought to know better than to ask questions like that.

Exercise 1. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as an adverbial modifier of purpose.

1. He came over here not to quarrel with you but just to warn you that they might do you harm. 2. To get the information you need you'd better go

to the agency. 3. Sit still not to fall down. 4. To be a top student you'll have to work hard. 5. Switch off the light not to wake the baby up. 6. Calvin opened the window to air the room. 7. We were quiet and walked slowly not to frighten them. 8. We moved into that house to look after our grandma. 9. I left a message to tell her about his call. 10. Come to see us in July. 11. Jack moved a little, so as to be able to see beyond the group of young men. 12. People go to safari to watch wild animals in their natural habitat. 13. To exclude all possibility of mistakes it's necessary to do research in this field as well to explain anything.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentences using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of purpose.

Model: He scraped up the money as he wanted to start a restaurant. – He scraped up the money to start a restaurant.

1. I'm going to the post office as I want to post a parcel. 2. We should hurry up, or we'll miss the 6.00 train. 3. Turn the sound down. I don't want you to disturb the neighbours. 4. She'd like to stay in good shape and she joined a sports club. 5. They took the phone off the hook. Nobody could phone them. 6. I had to act as a clown as I wanted to make them laugh. 7. You should follow your boss's instructions as it can prevent your going bankrupt. 8. I'll give you my telephone number. You can phone me at work. 9. We are organizing a "Fun Run". We want to raise money for the local hospital. 10. If you want to take away the pain you should take a medicine. 11. Speak louder. Then Granny can hear you. 12. His grandmother went to the hospital as she wanted to be examined by a specialist. 13. If you want to take off weight you should go on a diet. 14. We are installing solar heating. We want to save energy. 15. She wanted to make a living and started giving private lessons.

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences.

1. After classes we stayed at the University 2. I called on him yesterday... . 3. He stepped aside politely 4. I read the story the second time 5. He had to work hard 6. The family had gathered 7. We stopped 8. She might have dropped in 9. I've opened the door 10. Write down this rule... . 11. We climbed up the mountain 12. I won't play the radio loudly...

Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of purpose.

1. Чтобы разобраться в этой истории, надо выслушать каждого свидетеля. 2. Чтобы стать хорошим врачом, необходима большая практика.

3. Чтобы не попасть в беду, не надо рисковать. 4. Мы попросили наших друзей позвонить ей, чтобы лишний раз ей не надоедать. 5. Для того, чтобы добиться успеха в спорте, необходимо тренироваться день и ночь. 6. Чтобы познать истину, ее надо искать. 7. Не надо быть слишком умным, чтобы понять, что они влюблены. 8. Чтобы уйти незамеченным, он решил переждать до ночи. 9. Чтобы насладиться природой, надо побывать в каком-нибудь тихом, уединенном месте и ни с кем не общаться. 10. Мы сделали вид, что не заметили его ошибки, чтобы не смущать его. 11. Он вызвал машину, чтобы отвезти нас на вокзал. 12. Он пошел в библиотеку, чтобы взять книги, которые ему нужны для экзамена по физике. 13. Она всегда гуляет вечером, чтобы лучше спать. 14. Я пришел, чтобы проститься с вами. 15. Надень теплое пальто, чтобы не простудиться. 16. Я сейчас же запишу номер вашего телефона, чтобы не забыть его.

Exercise 5. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of result.

1. Her little brother is clever enough to understand what you feel. 2. Jane is too polite to insult anybody. 3. He is not such an idiot as to marry again. He is fed up with his first marriage. 4. The car is too slow to cover this distance in two hours' time. 5. I was so lucky as to see the first night of his play. 6. It is too funny to be taken seriously. 7. My brother is not such a fool as to give up his job. 8. Her younger son is talented enough to get the first prize. 9. The girl is too weak to carry such a heavy case. 10. The text is short enough to be translated in an hour. 11. I intended to use the opportunity, it was too good to be missed. 12. Dixon was clever enough to avoid talking on this subject with Welch. 13. He was so fortunate as to escape. 14. You are too young to start giving up you plans.

Exercise 6. Paraphrase the sentences using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of result.

Model: The storm was so strong that I couldn't go out. – The storm was too strong (for me) to go out.

1. It was so dark that he could see nothing before him. 2. The lecture was so dull, I didn't take any notes. 3. You are so experienced, you ought to know better. 4. Mr. Burton was so cruel that he could send a man to death. 5. He was so angry, he wouldn't speak to me. 6. The story "A Friend in Need" is so tragic, it can't be merely ironical. 7. She was so excited that she couldn't utter a

word. 8. The flat is extremely expensive. We can't afford it. 9. My cousin was optimistic. She applied for the job again. 10. The old man was broad-minded. He sympathized with the younger generation. 11. Kate is attractive. It's easy to fall in love with her. 12. The man was so down and out that he couldn't get a decent job. 13. He wasn't manly. He couldn't admit his mistake. 14. I'll never agree to do it. I'm not an idiot. 15. He was angry. He didn't care what he did. 16. She knows English so well that she can read S. Maugham in the original. 17. It was very late. Nobody could help him. 18. Her friends are warm-hearted. They will help her. 19. The man was not very strong and so he was unable to swim the distance. 20. I was tired. I couldn't go out with them.

Exercise 7. Complete the sentences.

1. The traffic was too heavy 2. Her advice is good enough 3. His clothes are too shabby 4. The melody was so romantic as 5. The novel was easy enough 6. He was too astonished ... 7. I am not such a fool as.... 8. She was too sad 9. The circumstances are too serious 10. She is beautiful enough 11. She was so kind as 12. He ran fast enough

Exercise 8. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of result / consequence.

1. Он слишком благороден, чтобы вызвать подозрения. 2. Дети недостаточно умны и внимательны, чтобы контролировать свое поведение. 3. Тед был так добр, что дал мне в долг эти деньги. 4. Том слишком упрям, чтобы следовать твоему совету. 5. Было чересчур шумно, чтобы слышать слова. 6. Его условия слишком тяжелы, чтобы принять их. 7. Она была так мила, что согласилась выслушать нас. 8. Вы слишком слепы, чтобы чувствовать, чего она добивается от вас. 9. Его намерение выглядит слишком странно, чтобы не вызвать всеобщего удивления. 10. Течение было таким сильным, что он не мог проплыть вокруг маяка. 11. Рассказ был слишком захватывающим, чтобы не дочитать его до конца. 12. Его произношение было слишком правильным, чтобы быть естественным. 13. Он достаточно здоров, чтобы кататься на коньках. 14. Не бери этот чемодан. Он слишком тяжелый для тебя. 15. Эти апельсины для меня слишком кислые. 16. Он слишком низкого роста, чтобы играть в волейбол. 17. Она слишком удивлена, чтобы говорить об этом. 18. Этот выпускник слишком плохо подготовлен для того, чтобы принять его в университет.

Exercise 9. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

1. He left her never to see her again. 2. Oscar left us only to realize soon that he couldn't live alone. 3. We saw him off never to hear from him. 4. She argued with her mother only to find out she was wrong. 5. They bought a new house never to live there. 6. He visited his aunt to see that she was seriously ill. 7. I turned around just in time to see her look at her husband. 8. He returned home to find the window broken. 9. He went quickly to the bathroom, and returned to find Murphy sitting beside his bed. 10. She liked to be kind to people and used to give promises to forget them at once. 11. He went to the Middle East to die of yellow fever. 12. He turned to Kate to find her in conversation with Carol Goldsmith.

Exercise 10. Join the sentences using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances. Use the words suggested.

Model: Ann started going in for sports without any enthusiasm. Quite of a sudden she became a master of sports. (to become) – Ann started going in for sports without any enthusiasm to become a master of sports.

1. The child woke up. He saw that he was alone. (to see) 2. They reached Le Havre in the early afternoon. They found that there was no steamer. (only to find) 3. Jack broke his leg badly while playing in a football match. Since then he could never go in for football again. (never to go) 4. She stopped at the corner. She understood that she had to go on. (only to understand) 5. She rushed home. She found that a thief was exploring the house. (to find) 6. She woke up. She saw that the sun was shining. (to see) 7. Thousands of fans came to see the competition in track and field events. They were unexpectedly struck by the new record. (to be struck) 8. He acted according to his conviction. He understood that nobody cared for his opinion. (only to understand) 9. The police arrived almost immediately. They found that the criminals had disappeared. (only to find) 10. She looked at her face attentively. She saw that she resembled her mother. (to see) 11. She made him confess. She understood that his confession didn't move her. (only to understand) 12. He went to America. Soon he died of a heart attack. (to die) 13. At the age of 45 he resigned. He never returned to public life. (never to return) 14. Rose often complained of pains in her leg. Her husband wasn't sorry for her. (only to see) 15. Steve tried to talk her into going to Paris. Soon he realized that he failed. (only to realize) 16. I returned from America. I found that my sister had bought a new house. (to find) 17. She entered the room. She found that her husband was talking to a stranger. (to find)

Exercise 11. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

1. Наши друзья навестили нас прошлым летом и больше не приезжали к нам после этого. 2. Он проснулся рано утром и увидел, что комната была пуста. 3. Он однажды объяснился ей в любви и больше никогда не произносил этих слов. 4. Дэниел закончил играть и увидел, что публика была в восторге. 5. Она улыбнулась и поняла, что ее улыбка вызывает у него восхищение. 6. Дети прибежали в комнату и увидели, что там полно гостей. 7. Она сказала ему все об их отношениях и больше никогда не возвращалась к этой теме. 8. Я просмотрел две главы и нашел только пять подходящих примеров. 9. На следующее утро она проснулась и обнаружила, что она одна во всем доме. 10. После длительного путешествия он вернулся домой и понял, что в гостях хорошо, а дома лучше. 11. Он прошел через все комнаты и увидел только кошку на кухне. Квартира была пуста. 12. Она открыла дверь и увидела, что отец ходит взад и вперед в сильном гневе. 13. После долгого отсутствия она вернулась домой и поняла, что ничего не изменилось: они не простили ее. 14. Она открыла дверь и увидела, что все уже собрались и ждут ее.

Exercise 12. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of time. Paraphrase the sentences using adverbial clauses of time.

Model: I was pleased to see you yesterday. – I was pleased when I saw you yesterday.

1. My grandma lived to be 83. 2. Erik was scared to see you as it was very dark. 3. I was surprised to learn that Ellen had got that job. 4. She was displeased to be told that she was a troublemaker. 5. They were happy to be asked for help. 6. They expressed relief to be told she had given birth to a child. 7. His father was furious to learn that he had done a dishonorable thing. 8. We could hardly believe our eyes to see that the room was full of nice presents and flowers. 9. She felt miserable to be eventually exposed. 10. I was happy to hear that they had gone to London. 11. She was excited to hear from her son. 12. Ann felt sad to hear those rumours. 13. He was surprised to learn how much he'd spent. 14. Mr. Smith lived to be 90.

Exercise 13. Translate the sentences into English using an infinitive as adverbial modifier of time.

1. Марк разгневался, когда узнал, что сын без разрешения взял его машину. 2. Джоан обрадовалась, когда ей сообщили, что дом построен

и они могут переехать туда. 3. Он расстроился, когда узнал, что цены поднялись. 4. Мы были недовольны, когда нам сообщили, что дом продали дешево. 5. Девочка испугалась, когда увидела незнакомца. 6. Он был ошеломлен, когда ему сказали, что Лидия будет играть главную роль. 7. Она перестала волноваться за него, когда ей стало известно, что он получит хорошую работу. 8. Стив был в ярости, когда увидел, что от его дома не осталось и следа. (to find no trace) 9. Она была счастлива, когда ей сказали, что им предстоит интересное путешествие.

Exercise 14. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of exception. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. They do nothing but walk all day long. 2. What can I do but buy another suit? 3. There's nothing to do except believe her that he is alive. 4. What can we do but agree to take the business in our hands? 5. There was nothing to do except leave them alone and wait till they realized that they needed our help. 6. What could she do but forgive them and forget about what they had done? 7. She does nothing but make noise and disturb him. 8. There's nothing to do except watch her day and night. 9. The electrician had nothing to do but attend to his switches.

Exercise 15. Translate the sentences into English using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of exception.

1. Он только и делает, что высмеивает ее. 2. Что я мог сделать, кроме как пожалеть его и взять к себе. 3. Больше ничего не остается, кроме как занять деньги и расплатиться с ним. 4. Что он может сделать, кроме как разрешить им видеться с ребенком. 5. Больше ничего не оставалось, кроме как молиться за него. 6. Что его отец мог сделать, кроме как высказать свою точку зрения и дать ему мудрый совет. 7. Она только и делает, что заставляет его решать свои личные проблемы. 8. Ему больше ничего не остается, кроме как обратиться к первому незнакомцу и попросить у него помощи. 9. Она только и делает, что ворчит. 10. Не оставалось ничего, кроме как выполнять указание. 11. Что еще она могла сделать, кроме как уступить ему.

Exercise 16. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of comparison / manner. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. She waved her hand as if to give some sign to him. 2. Everyone knows that to tell the truth is better than to tell lies. 3. She paused for a minute as if to drop a hint that she was tired of talking. 4. Marthy stretched her hand towards

him as if to ask him for help. 5. Ben looked sadly at his mother as though to let her know that he felt sorry for her. 6. Her voice trembled as if to prove her being nervous and excited. 7. He was the first to break the silence and it was wiser on his part at that moment than to wait till they uttered a word. 8. He shook his head as though to show that he was dissatisfied. 9. To have little money is better than not to have it at all. 10. She seemed more anxious to listen to the troubles of others than to discuss her own. 11. Damn it, I've got more important things to do than look at the sea.

Exercise 17. Paraphrase the sentences using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of comparison / manner.

Model: She looked at him as if she wanted to tell him something. – She looked at him as if to tell him something.

1. Mary didn't phone John for a long time which might prove that she didn't want to talk to him. 2. They exchanged meaningful glances as if they wanted to show us that they were together. 3. He looked at me for a moment and all of a sudden he screamed as if he wanted to frighten me. 4. The girl kept weeping and thus showed that she was really miserable. 5. George wanted to surprise everybody and appeared quite unexpectedly. 6. She turned to me as if she was going to ask me something. 7. He pressed his finger to his lips as if he wanted to warn her. 8. The man whistled. It seemed he wanted to attract my attention. 9. His cousin giggled and it proved that she didn't take his proposal seriously.

Exercise 18. Translate the sentences into English using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of comparison / manner.

1. Она покраснела и прошептала что-то, как будто хотела сказать, что ей стыдно. 2. Они поднялись, как будто давая им понять, что разговор окончен. 3. Проводить отпуск на море гораздо лучше, чем сидеть в душном городе все лето. 4. Это было на нее не похоже, но она разрыдалась, как будто показывая, что его слова оскорбительны для нее. 5. Ей казалось, что беседовать о погоде хуже, чем о современной литературе. 6. Глаза ее сияли, словно говорили, что она с нетерпением ждала встречи с ним. 7. Он покачал головой, словно показывал, что он осуждает их. 8. Он позвал Лолу назад, как будто для того, чтобы извиниться за что-то. 9. Он ополоснул лицо и голову ледяной водой, словно для того, чтобы охладить лихорадку. 10. Он встал, словно для того, чтобы подойти к гостям. 11. Она повернулась, словно собираясь уходить. 12. Она коснулась его плеча, словно хотела остановить его.

The infinitive as parenthesis

As parenthesis the infinitive is used as part of some set expressions, such as:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. to begin with | 9. to put it mildly |
| 2. to be more precise | 10. to put it more plainly |
| 3. to be quite frank | 11. to say the least |
| 4. to be sure | 12. to say nothing of |
| 5. to crown it all | 13. so to speak |
| 6. to make the matter worse | 14. strange to say |
| 7. to make a long story short | 15. to sum it up |
| 8. needless to say | 16. to tell the truth |

As a rule a parenthesis refers to the whole sentence or clause and is placed at the beginning of the sentence though sometimes it may be placed in the middle of the sentence.

e.g. To tell you the truth, I'm glad to have a companion myself.

To cut a long story short, everything ended to her delight.

Exercise 1. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as parenthesis. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. A good teacher should try, so to speak, to breathe life into his or her subject. 2. To be frank, she realized that she had no claims on him. 3. To crown it all, the magazine was forced to close down. 4. To be more precise, I wouldn't call it awful, but it wasn't very well written. 5. To begin with, you need to brush up your French. 6. To say the least, she lacked tact in expressing her views. 7. To make a long story short, he acquired a reputation of being a formidable opponent. 8. He was terribly slow, to be sure, and spoke as if he was half asleep or drugged. 9. To put it more plainly, if there is anything you want to see, just drop by. 10. To be quite frank, it's early yet to say whether it works. 11. To begin with, she opened all the windows. 12. To tell you the truth, I am very tired.

Exercise 2. a) Complete the sentences. Use an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as parenthesis.

1. ..., less talented artists were totally eclipsed. 2. ..., I was thinking of going in for school-teaching. 3. ..., he scolded his daughter for keeping them waiting. 4. ..., it was a terrible laugh, very quiet and intense. 5. ..., he gave him the wrong telephone number just for a laugh. 6. ..., he named a price he thought would scare me off. 7. ..., our neighbours like to nose about. So we always keep our door locked.

b) Make up sentences using the following infinitive phrases parenthetically:

1. to make a long story short; 2. to put it mildly; 3. to crown it all; 4. to tell you the truth; 5. to say the least of it; 6. to begin with; 7. to judge by her appearance.

Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Точнее сказать, он не хочет, чтобы мы вмешивались в его дела. 2. Откровенно говоря, я сыт по горло ее жалобами. 3. Как ни странно, но она никогда нам не звонит. 4. Мягко говоря, он редко сочувствует ей. 5. Короче говоря, оставим все разговоры и приступим к делу. 6. По меньшей мере, она поступила неразумно. 7. Проще говоря, если хотите присоединиться к нам, приезжайте рано утром. 8. Он, так сказать, слишком молод для такой карьеры. 9. Я понял, а точнее, почувствовал, почему они отказались сотрудничать с нами. 10. Твой поклонник, т.е. твой будущий муж, обещает помочь вам? 11. Дом его сгорел, машину украли и, ко всему прочему, он потерял работу. 12. В общем, я полностью потерял контроль над ситуацией.

Infinitive Constructions

The infinitive is used in three predicative constructions: the objective with the infinitive construction, the subjective infinitive construction and the for-to-infinitive construction.

The objective with the infinitive construction

The objective with the infinitive construction forms a complex object, thus it follows the predicate of the sentence.

The construction consists of

- 1) a nominal element (a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case),
- 2) an infinitive which is in predicate relation to the noun or the pronoun.

The objective with the infinitive construction is used:

1. After the verbs denoting *sense perception* (*to see, to hear, to feel, to watch, to observe, to notice* etc.). With these verbs only a *bare non-perfect, non-continuous, active infinitive* is used.

e.g. I felt her touch my hand softly. – Я почувствовал, как она тихо дотронулась до моей руки.

I haven't heard anyone call me. – Я не слышал, чтобы кто-нибудь меня звал.

After these verbs the infinitive indicates that we heard or saw the whole of the action, that's why it is often translated into Russian by a verb in the past tense (разбил, дрогнула).

If the meaning is passive, Participle II is used.

e.g. I saw the luggage put into the car. – Я видел, как багаж положили в машину.

If the process is expressed, Participle I is used.

e.g. I saw him crossing the street. – Я видел, как он переходил улицу.

Note: When the verb *to see* is used in the meaning *to realize*, *to understand* or the verb *to hear* is used in the meaning *to learn*, the objective with the infinitive construction cannot be used. In such cases a subordinate clause is used.

e.g. I saw that he didn't understand the danger. – Я видел (понял), что он не осознает опасности.

I hear that he lives in Minsk again. – Я слышал (узнал), что он живет в Минске.

Note: After the verbs *to see*, *to notice* when they denote sense perception the infinitive of the verb *to be* is not used. Instead a subordinate clause is used.

e.g. I noticed that he was there. – Я заметил, что он был там.

We saw that he was in. – Я увидел, что он дома.

2. After verbs of mental activity (*to think*, *to believe*, *to consider*, *to expect*, *to understand*, *to suppose*, *to find* etc.). After these verbs the infinitive may be used in any form though non-perfect forms are more frequent.

e.g. I didn't expect him to return so early. – Я не ожидал, что он вернется так рано.

I find him to be very witty. – Я нахожу, что он очень остроумный человек.

After these verbs, however, the objective with the infinitive construction is rather literary and not very common. These verbs are more often used with a that-clause (an objective clause).

e.g. I thought that he was an excellent choice.

The infinitive may be omitted when followed by an adjective (or sometimes a noun).

e.g. I think her very talented.

I found the lecture boring.

3. After verbs of feeling and emotion (*to like*, *to love*, *to hate*, *to dislike*, *cannot bear* etc.).

e.g. I like people to tell the truth. – Я люблю, когда люди говорят правду.

4. After verbs of wish and intention (*to want, to wish, to desire, to mean, to intend, etc.*).

e.g. I want you to believe me. – Я хочу, чтобы вы мне верили.

5. After verbs of declaring (*to declare, to report, to pronounce, etc.*).

e.g. They reported the plane to have landed. – Сообщили, что самолет приземлился.

6. After verbs of inducement (*to force, to have, to make, to get, to cause, etc.*), when *to have* is used in the meaning of *заставить, сказать, чтобы; to make* in the meaning of *заставить; to cause* in the meaning of *заставить, распорядиться*.

Note: the verbs *to have* and *to make* are followed in this construction only by a bare infinitive.

e.g. I hope you'll have him sign the papers. – Надеюсь, ты добьешься, чтобы он подписал документы.

I made my son do his homework. – Я заставил сына сделать уроки.

7. After verbs of order or permission (*to order, to allow, to suffer, to ask, to let, to tell, etc.*).

Note: the verb *to let* is followed by a bare infinitive.

e.g. Let me help you. – Позвольте помочь вам.

After some verbs requiring a prepositional object (*to count on, to look for, to listen to, to rely on*).

e.g. We counted on him to help us. – Мы рассчитывали, что он нам поможет.

Exercise 1. Underline the objective with the infinitive construction. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. We can't believe him to have robbed the bank. 2. He hated her to wake him up every morning. 3. I'll get you to give the money back. 4. We relied on her to book the tickets. 5. I thought her to be the most disagreeable person. 6. Susan ordered the tea to be brought. 7. I'd like my book to be published in English. 8. They couldn't allow all the money to be given to one person. 9. We'd like the car to be parked near the office. 10. I'm sorry, I didn't notice him enter the room. 11. Let her say whatever she wants to. 12. Nobody will have him stay here. 13. I saw him play computer games. 14. Can you make her apply mustard plasters? 15. Did you notice the dean come into the room? 16. No one could expect her to be happy. 17. I've watched you grow for many years, from when you were a little baby. 18. He was looking for someone to help him. 19. I wanted us to be married at once, but she was quite firm that she wouldn't.

Exercise 2. Use the infinitives in brackets as parts of complex objects. Make all the necessary changes.

1. The pills the doctor has given me made me (to feel) much better. 2. I saw my father (to leave) the house that very morning. 3. George was sure that fresh air and exercise would make us (to sleep) well. 4. I thought it (to be) a signal to start. 5. We didn't expect him (to come back) so soon and were wondering what had happened. 6. I'd like it (to be done) as quietly as possible, without attracting anybody's attention. 7. Just at that moment he heard his door (to open) and quickly (to shut). 8. The regulations require me (to wear) this uniform. 9. James promised me (to arrive) on time. 10. I told her (to return) the book promptly. 11. Everybody saw him (to lock) the door and (to put) the key into his pocket. 12. He felt the eyes of his group (to rest) on him. 13. There is some information I want you (to obtain). 14. He liked to see them (to work). 15. He let them (to go). 16. Lawson nodded quickly and walked away. Philip felt a shiver (to pass) through his heart. 17. Amy speaks ten languages perfectly well! You can't expect me (to believe) that. 18. I've never heard him (to speak) of his life in Australia.

Exercise 3. a) Combine the sentences using the complex object.

Model: I didn't see him. He entered the house. – I didn't see him enter the house.

I saw him. He was entering the house. – I saw him entering the house.

1. He heard her. She was playing the piano. 2. He saw her. She burst into tears. 3. They didn't notice us. We passed by. 4. I felt her hand. It was shaking. 5. I heard them. They were arguing. 6. She heard the footsteps. They were dying away. 7. We many times heard him. He told this story. 8. She noticed the expression of his face. It changed suddenly. 9. She felt something. It was crawling around her neck. 10. I heard somebody. He mentioned my name. 11. I felt something hard. It hurt my leg. 12. They haven't seen the accident. It occurred at the corner. 13. He hasn't heard us. We called his name. 14. The burglar got into the house. The neighbours noticed it. 15. We shall go to the party. I would like that.

b) Change complex sentences into sentences with the complex object.

1. We expect that he will solve this problem soon. 2. I've heard how she was crying. 3. I hate when people shout at each other. 4. She could hardly believe that he had been rescued. 5. She likes to watch how the sun sets. 6. They suppose that he will cope with this work. 7. She saw how the children were playing in the yard. 8. I didn't expect that she would forget about

my birthday. 9. I don't like when the children are late for dinner. 10. I suspect that he has taken my money. 14. Don't consider that he is a hero. He is an ordinary man. 12. Do you know that he went abroad two days ago? 13. I cannot bear when she says bad words. 14. I believe you will make the right decision. 15. The boys reported that the translation had been completed. 16. I find that her nephew looks much younger. 17. He hates when his wife talks with her friends for hours on the phone. 18. They declared that the general wasn't guilty. 19. They consider that Charles did it on purpose. 20. She felt that he touched her on the back and heard that he whispered something tenderly. 21. I didn't mean that you should go there immediately. 22. I thought I'd cheated her.

Exercise 4. Finish the sentences.

Model: They ran after the burglar. – Did you see...? – Did you see them run after the burglar?

1. Henry always tells lies, and Ann hates it. – Ann can't bear 2. You should help your brother. – I want 3. Why do you say that? – What makes ...? 4. They arrived at 6 p.m. – I didn't expect 5. She must come to see us. – Get 6. He is to pay the bill. – Please, have 7. They never speak rudely. – Have you ever heard ...? 8. I was sure he would come on time. – I expected 9. She swept the floor. – I made 10. The wind blew her hat down the street. – They watched 11. The house shook as the earthquake started. – The earthquake made 12. Could you lend me your bike? – I want 13. She seldom dances. – Have you ever seen ...? 14. Why do you think so? – What makes ...?

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences using either an objective with the infinitive construction or a subordinate clause.

1. Helen saw ... (her son – to come to the studio). 2. I heard ... (the Browns – to leave for Glasgow). 3. We noticed ... (the writer – to be shy when talking to the audience). 5. Nick heard ... (the criminal – to sentence to death). 6. She saw (her husband – to mow the lawn). 7. Mother saw ... (I – to be out of spirits). 8. Dick heard ... (the boys – to cry outside). 9. I hear ... (Mike – to live in London). 10. I have never seen ... (Peter – to dance). 11. Robert noticed ... (the stranger – to hide the documents). 12. She saw ... (he – to mend his car). 13. I noticed ... (he – to steal the purse). 14. Can't you see ... (she – to be in love with him). 15. The boy saw ... (the car – to start at last). 16. He heard (his best friend – to divorce).

Exercise 6. Translate the sentences into English using an objective with the infinitive construction.

1. Я увидела, как он открыл дверь и вошел, когда никого не было дома. 2. Никогда не слышал, чтобы он читал стихи. 3. Пусть он поступает, куда хочет, и сам поймет, если это неправильный выбор. 4. Неужели она не может заставить своего мужа сделать ремонт? 5. Не поверю, что они отказались от новой квартиры. 6. Мне не нравится, когда вы приходите без предупреждения. 7. Из-за него она уехала и бросила хорошую работу. 8. Не выношу, когда ты бездействуешь вместо того, чтобы чем-то ему помочь. 9. Хочу, чтобы они съездили отдохнуть и немного развлеклись. 10. Полагаю, что этот фильм не для детей. 11. Мэри заявила, что никогда не видела этого человека. 12. Как мне заставить их сделать работу вовремя? 6. Не думала, что он издевается над своим собственным ребенком. 13. Я не хочу полагаться на то, что кто-то потратит свои деньги, пытаюсь спасти положение. 14. Люблю, когда ты звонишь мне по вечерам. 15. Я считаю, что его доклад – это новое слово в науке. 16. Я раньше наблюдал, как он идет под руку со своей женой. 17. Не позволю, чтобы порочили его честное имя. 18. Он никогда не приказывает что-то делать, а просто просит своих сотрудников. 19. Мы полагаем, что этот эксперимент очень важен. 20. Разрешите, пожалуйста, взять эту книгу сейчас. 21. Он не ожидал, что я так быстро уйду. 22. Давайте подождем их у входа. 23. Она слышала, как уехала его машина. 24. Они советуют мне найти другую работу. 25. Его письма обычно заставляли ее смеяться. 26. Я слышал, как он хлопнул дверью и ушел.

The subjective infinitive construction

The subjective infinitive construction consists of

1) a nominal element – a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case, and

2) a verbal element – an infinitive which denotes a state or an action performed by a person or non-person expressed by the nominal element.

e.g. He is said to have been sent to New York.

Dinny is likely to come today.

The subjective infinitive construction is used with a number of finite verbs which can be either active or passive. They all have the general meaning of attitude or comment when used with this construction.

I. The verbs used in the *passive voice* fall into four groups:

1) verbs of sense perception;

- 2) verbs of mental perception;
- 3) verbs of saying and reporting;
- 4) verbs of inducement, compulsion and permission.

1. Verbs of sense perception (*to hear, to see, to observe, to watch*). When in the passive form these verbs are followed by a *to-infinitive*. With this construction they express the idea of evidence of some fact. Here also belong some other verbs which in the passive voice express the idea of evidence (*to find, to discover, etc.*).

e.g. He was seen to cross the river. (Somebody was a witness of this fact.)

Note: If a process is meant, non-perfect participle I active is used:

e.g. They were seen swimming across the river.

2. Verbs of mental perception (*to think, to know, to consider, to believe, to suppose, to expect, etc.*). With the verb *to expect* the infinitive in this construction can refer to a future action.

e.g. He was supposed to marry her.

The soldiers were expected to do their duty in the coming battle.

3. Verbs of saying and reporting (*to say, to report*).

e.g. A new star was reported to have appeared in the East.

The treaty is said to have been signed yesterday.

4. Verbs of inducement, compulsion and permission (*to make, to allow, to let, etc.*). When used in the passive voice the verbs *to make* and *to let* are followed by a *to-infinitive*.

e.g. She was made to take pony-riding, or piano-exercise.

She was allowed to enter the room.

In all the above mentioned cases (except) group 4 the sentences with the subjective infinitive constructions are translated into Russian by a *Russian complex sentence* with an indefinite-personal main clause (*неопределенно-личное предложение*).

While sentences with the verbs of group 4 are translated into Russian by *simple sentences* though also indefinite-personal ones.

e.g. To keep his thoughts to himself, he had been forced to divest himself of all personality. – Чтобы молчать о том, что он думает, он должен был отрешиться от себя.

They were heard to enter. – Слышали, как они вошли в дом.

II. The verbs used in the *active voice* are:

To seem, to appear – казаться, по-видимому, похоже;

To happen, to chance – случаться, случайно произойти;

To prove, to turn out – оказаться.

e.g. His illness seemed to have made his eyes larger.

The young people happened to meet the famous musician in the street.

He turned out to live in Hastings.

III. The subjective infinitive construction is used with some modal phrases (*to be likely, to be unlikely, to be sure, to be certain*). Sentences of this kind are rendered in Russian by a simple sentence with a modal word (*обязательно, наверняка, несомненно* – to be certain, to be sure; *вероятно* – to be likely; *вряд ли* – to be unlikely).

e.g. The secret is certain to come out.

He is unlikely to require my presence.

With all these modal phrases the infinitive denotes an action referring to the future, so they cannot be followed by a perfect infinitive with reference to the past.

Exercise 1. Underline the subjective construction. Translate the sentences into Russian.

Model: He was seen to unlock the door. – Видели, как он открыл дверь.

1. He happened to do a dishonorable act against his conscience. 2. The criminal is unlikely to rob the bank. 3. The problems never really seemed to affect his mode of life. 4. He was seen to be developing the film. 5. If you throw mud you are sure to slip in it. 6. In democracies the people seem to act as they please. 7. They were discussing where they should go on Sunday and she happened to overhear them. 8. She was heard to phone her friend. 9. She was seen to be trying on a new dress. 10. They proved to have very little sense of freedom and independence. 11. The headmaster is supposed to take care of the staff. 12. His activities seem to serve noble purposes. 13. Until now we were of the impression that he was sure to get his scholarship. 14. They are expected to solve all the family problems. 15. We sent them our comments on their work but they appear to take no interest.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the following sentences using complex subjects with the infinitive.

a) 1. It's believed that John has arrived in London. 2. It's known that Jack is good at painting. 3. It's believed that he's clever. 4. It's said that he is the best student in our group. 5. It's known that he has collected a large number of pictures by Daly. 6. It's reported that the delegation of English teachers has left London. 7. It's considered that our ballet is the best in Europe. 8. It's reported that the spaceship has landed successfully. 9. It's said that he'll be one of the best students at our faculty in the nearest future. 10. It's expected that many delegates will arrive at this conference.

b) 1. It seemed that she sensed the purpose of this question. 2. When she passed by it appeared that they were looking at her attentively. 3. It happened that his father came. 4. It happened that everybody had taken the problem seriously. 5. It proved that he was their devoted friend. 6. It seems that he is playing tennis. 7. It appears that Bill has been playing chess with his neighbour for two hours. 8. It was so wonderful to see old George. It seems he needs a friend. 9. It happened that Mary was at home at this time. 10. It proved that his plan was a great success.

c) 1. It was likely that he had hidden my magazine under his papers. 2. It was unlikely that she would accept their invitation. 3. It's sure that my parents will come to see me at Christmas. 4. I think it's likely Peter will make that mistake. 5. It's unlikely that he'll come and see us soon. 6. It's likely the flight will be delayed. The weather is really awful. 7. It's certain that they'll have concluded the agreement by the end of December. 8. It's likely that the talks will continue till the end of the week. 9. It's certain that the meeting will be held on Friday. 10. It's unlikely that they'll get our letter so soon.

Exercise 3. Paraphrase the sentences. Use a subjective infinitive construction.

Model: It is expected that the committee will help the refugees. – The committee is expected to help the refugees.

1. It is reported that the police caught the criminal. 2. It is believed that Mr. Kelly will have an operation next week. 3. It is said that Bobbie is in prison for robbery. 4. It is supposed that St. James's park is one of the nicest parks in London. 5. It is known that this football team has lost all their matches this season. 6. It is thought that the Council is still discussing the unemployment problem. 7. Probably he will lose a lot of money gambling. (to be likely) 8. I am not sure that the candidate will win the election. (to be unlikely) 9. It is certain that all of them will come to the party. (to be certain) 10. I am absolutely sure that they will solve the problems facing the company. (to be sure) 11. Nothing can make him emigrate to Australia. 12. Nobody will allow her to change her job. 13. They didn't want to stop the noise but their neighbours required that they should do it. (to force) 14. The girl's mother let her use the washing machine. 15. They saw that the fire brigade arrived. 16. Everyone heard that he shouted at his wife. 17. They discovered that the bicycle had been stolen. 18. It's certain that they will adopt the resolution. 19. The detective made the criminal confess. 20. It's known that the new tourist agency is the best.

Exercise 4. Use the appropriate form of the infinitive.

Model: The boy is sure (to punish) for what he's done. – The boy is sure to be punished for what he's done.

1. I happened (to pass) by your house when I heard the noise. 2. Where's Jim? He seems (to leave). 3. You look so flushed. You seem (to run) a high temperature. 4. It's so nice here. Everybody appears (to enjoy) the party. 5. The storm is reported (to cause) much damage and (to kill) many people. 6. The public was reported (to give) a warm reception to the pop group. 7. Our yachtsman Konyukhov is said (to visit) many countries on his way round the world. 8. He is also known (to conquer) Mount Everest, the highest in the world. 9. He is known (to set) some world records. 10. Look, it's raining again. It seems (to rain) for ages. 11. The weather isn't likely (to change) for the better today. 12. Why are you here? You seem (to forget) about your appointment with the dentist who is certain (to wait) for you now. 13. This was the moment that seemed (to mark) the start of the interview. 14. She seemed (to listen) carefully to what he said. 15. Such idle talk was little likely (to reach) the ears of Mr. Dombey.

Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English. Use a subjective infinitive construction.

1. Сообщают, что они дошли до самой высокой вершины. 2. Известно, что комиссия проверила все результаты выборов. 3. Оказывается, он сейчас сдает экзамены. 4. Вряд ли она получит стипендию. 5. Наверняка родители повезут его в Крым. 6. Видели, что он закрыл окно и погасил свет. 7. Ей никогда не разрешают ходить на дискотеку. 8. Говорят, что он проиграл все деньги. 9. Ожидается, что этот музыкант даст три концерта. 10. Он сопротивлялся, но его заставили пригласить Джексонов на вечеринку. 11. Предполагается, что переговоры состоятся сразу после приезда делегации. 12. Думали, что он купит новую машину. 13. Слышали, как зазвонил телефон. 14. Нас заставили вложить деньги в строительство дома. 15. Никогда не видели, как он водит машину. 16. Кажется, тебя ищет шеф. 17. Ты, конечно, похудеешь, если сядешь на диету. 18. Маловероятно, что он будет обедать не дома. 19. Слышали, у него масса друзей. 20. Безусловно, мы придем к вам на свадьбу. 21. Оказалось, что в отпуск он ездил в Грецию. 22. Сообщили, что самолет приземлился вовремя. 23. Нам разрешили фотографироваться в соборе. 24. Полагают, что маленькие дети не должны смотреть этот фильм. 25. Говорят, что он лучший доктор в нашем городе. 26. Джейн, кажется, раньше, чем вы, изъявила желание помочь им.

The for-to-infinitive construction

The for-to-infinitive construction consists of

- 1) a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case and
- 2) an infinitive which is in predicate relation to the noun or pronoun. The construction is preceded by the preposition *for*, and that explains the name of the construction.

e.g. They waited for the door to open.
It is useless for me to speak to him.

This construction is translated into Russian by either a subordinate clause or an infinitive:

e.g. First of all it had been an excitement for Eveline to have a fellow.
– Прежде всего для Эвелин было большой радостью то, что у нее появился молодой человек.
It was easy for me to answer that question. – Мне легко было ответить на этот вопрос.

The for-to-infinitive construction may be used as:

1. a subject

e.g. For one to spend a summer with them was a wonderful experience.
But in this function the for-to-infinitive construction usually follows the introductory *it*.

e.g. It was usual for him to come in the nick of time.

2. a predicative

e.g. That is for you to decide.

2 a. part of a predicative

e.g. The room was easy for me to decorate.

3. a complex object

e.g. She didn't care for John to come.

They are anxious for the experiment to begin.

4. an attribute

e.g. There was no chance for her to meet him again.

5. an adverbial modifier of

a) purpose

e.g. He stopped for her to catch up with him.

b) result

In this function the construction is chiefly preceded by either the adverb *enough* or the adverb *too*.

e.g. He has done enough for me to hate him.

The lady was speaking too fast for me to catch what she said.

Exercise 1. Underline the for-to-infinitive construction. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. For Jane to make a pullover or a sweater is never a problem. 2. It was just a trifle for Bob to repair any motorcycle. 3. For Teddy to paint her portrait was a great pleasure. 4. It is impossible for any woman to resist this sort of temptation. 5. For Gordon to ask for advice meant that he was incapable to find a proper solution. 6. It was so hard for her to realize that she was accused of such a crime. 7. She wanted to ask him one or two questions but it was difficult for her to attract his attention. 8. The pill is so big that it's impossible for me to swallow it. 9. He has always liked taking risks and it isn't easy for us to persuade him not to do it now. 10. He kept walking quickly and I had to run as it was impossible for me to keep up with him. 11. Nellie was very keen on classical music and for her to listen to jazz or pop music was just like a terrible toothache. 12. For me to remember meeting him meant to remember everything that was connected with him.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to use *for*.

1. Sandy stood at the kitchen door waiting till Miss Brodie came for a walk by the sea. 2. It's quite natural that you should think so. 3. The first thing he must do is to ring them up. 4. It's time you should go, Tom. 5. There was nobody who she could speak to. 6. Janet sat and waited till he came up to us in order to ask the way again. 7. She then sat down in Mrs. Antoney's chair and waited till the kettle boiled. 8. He waited till the people spoke. 9. Let us wait till they settle the matter. 10. This is a problem you should solve by yourself. 11. I'll bring you the article that you may read. 12. He spoke loudly so that everyone might hear him. 13. There is nothing I can add. 14. It's very unusual that he should have said such a thing. 15. It's high time you knew grammar well.

Exercise 3. Match the parts of the sentences choosing the for-to-infinitive construction in its proper function.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. For him to make a choice in any situation | 1. for their large family to live in. |
| 2. His computer classes are absolutely necessary | 2. for all of us to admire. |
| 3. A good family doctor is not easy | 3. for him to eat. |
| 4. Mr. and Mrs. Crisp have done enough | 4. for the Browns to find. |
| 5. The water-melon is | 5. for John to be qualified for his job. |
| 6. We visited her quite often | 6. for him to be cured. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 7. The doctor's proposal was a good chance | 7. for their son to be set up on the right path. |
| 8. Isn't it a tedious and monotonous job | 8. for you to give up? |
| 9. Here's a perfect couple | 9. for her not to feel lonely. |
| 10. The flat is too small | 10. seems to be a problem. |

Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into English. Use a for-to-infinitive construction.

1. Мне легко с ней. Она чуткий и мягкий человек. 2. Нам сложно объяснить вам, как нужно вести себя. 3. Для Стива только удовольствие сходить с тобой в музей. 4. Гарри трудно понять, почему она не хочет поехать на пикник. 5. Для них не поверить тебе – это расстроить тебя. 6. Нам нежелательно прерывать отношения с ними, потому что мы знаем их сто лет. 7. Лоре легко изучать английский. Она способна к языкам. 8. Джерри ничего не стоит проконтролировать, как они выполняют свои обязательства. 9. Сделать ей комплимент означает для него польстить ей. 10. Для Артура приехать на час позже значит больше никогда не увидеть ее. 11. Для него достичь чего-нибудь никогда не бывает проблемой. По крайней мере, ему так кажется. 12. Кейт очень важно купить новые очки. Она не может читать в старых. 13. Для нее так естественно не реагировать на такие слова. 14. Она ждала, пока Анна вернется с прогулки. 15. Мне трудно подниматься по лестнице. 16. Вам легко это говорить. 17. Необходимо, чтобы товары были упакованы в крепкие мешки. 18. Вода была слишком холодной, чтобы мы могли купаться. 19. Моим друзьям было трудно успевать за мной. 20. Она говорила достаточно громко, чтобы все могли ее хорошо слышать. 21. Это вы должны решать. 22. Первое, что я должен сделать, это выяснить, когда прибывает поезд.

Exercise 5. Underline the for-to-infinitive construction used as predicative. Translate the sentences.

1. The main problem is for her to believe that he won't come back. 2. This house is just for you to see. 3. The first thing was for the child to be taken to the doctor. 4. The best thing was for the Robinsons not to get their son to sell his car. 5. The worst offer was for Andrew to leave his family and go abroad to work for that company. 6. The hardest problem was for the poor family to pay the rent. 7. The easiest way out is for John not to stay at a hotel but to rent a furnished room. 8. This paper is for you to type and send to our partner. 9. The linen is for Sandy to wash or to take to the laundry. 10. The book is for Henry to give back to Mike. 11. The video is for you to watch if you like.

Exercise 6. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the use of the for-to-infinitive construction as predicative.

1. Для него лучше всего было бы не ходить к ней и не травмировать ее. 2. Главное – ей понять, что отчаиваться не следует. 3. Самое разумное для ребенка – не смотреть пошлые фильмы и не читать пустые книги. 4. Основная проблема – чтобы она нашла ей подходящее лекарство. 5. Хуже всего для них – купить новый дом и не иметь возможности жить в нем. 6. Самое нежелательное для Джека – получить зарплату меньше, чем он рассчитывал. 7. Самое интересное для меня – съездить в Англию и посмотреть все главные достопримечательности. 8. Самое простое для Вас – не спорить с ними, а принять все, как есть. 9. Самое лучшее для вас – согласиться играть эту роль. 10. Главное для вас – отдать ему долг и больше никогда не обращаться к нему.

Exercise 7. Underline the for-to-infinitive construction used as complex object. Translate the sentences.

1. I don't care for you to agree with me. 2. She was anxious for him to marry Lady Gordon's daughter. 3. We waited for the teacher to come and start the exam. 4. She didn't care for her friends to approve of her decision. 5. Roy was anxious for his family to arrive as he missed them a lot. 6. Brian waited for Larry to find a way out for both of them. 7. They usually don't care for their children to go to bed in time.

Exercise 8. Translate the following sentences into English. Pay attention to the use of the for-to-infinitive construction as complex object.

1. Он очень хочет, чтобы его сын женился и сделал хорошую карьеру. 2. Ей все равно, одобряете ли вы ее выбор. 3. Мы ждали, что они купят новый телевизор, а нам отдадут старый. 4. Меня не волнует, что они уезжают. 5. Я очень хочу, чтобы мой фильм увидели за рубежом и оценили. 6. Мы ждали, что шеф позвонит утром, но напрасно. 7. Дэвид очень хочет, чтобы его жена нашла хорошую работу.

Exercise 9. Underline the for-to-infinitive construction used as attribute and the noun it modifies. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. There's nothing for us to talk about. 2. We have very little for them to give. 3. That was the last thing for her to say. 4. There was no time for them to pack the things. 5. There was nothing for the child to fear. 6. Unfortunately, I have nothing for you to drink. We've run out of wine. 7. There's nothing for you to admire here. 8. There's something for you to make fun of. 9. Here's a

very interesting item for you to read. 10. This is not the right girl for you to marry. 11. That's a nice place for us to have a good time at. 12. I've found a good job for you to earn enough money.

Exercise 10. Translate the sentences into English using the for-to-infinitive construction as attribute.

1. Нет никого, кого он мог бы полюбить и, наконец, найти свое семейное счастье. 2. Я принесла книгу, которую ты можешь почитать в дороге, когда поедешь в Крым. 3. Вот бутерброды, чтобы ты перекусил на работе. 4. Постарайся найти место, где ты можешь уединиться и поработать. 5. Я купил тебе подарок, который доставит тебе радость. 6. Это та проблема, на которую вы должны обратить внимание. 7. Это как раз тот человек, на которого ты можешь положиться. 8. Вот дом, в котором ты будешь чувствовать себя удобно. 9. Он составил план, который мы должны обсудить в ближайшее время. 10. Это лишь предлог, которым вы можете воспользоваться, чтобы не ходить на совещание. 11. Вот шанс для вас поговорить с ними. 12. Здесь нет ничего, что мы могли бы купить ей на день рождения. 13. Вот хороший повод для нас навестить их. 14. Отец купил компьютер, на котором сын может решать шахматные задачи.

Exercise 11. Underline the for-to-infinitive construction used as adverbial modifier of purpose. Translate the sentences.

1. She didn't say a word for them to understand that she agreed. 2. We did everything for him to be saved. 3. He has to wake me up very early for me to arrive at work in time. 4. Mary and Angela came into the room for their dad to give them some pocket money. 5. He brought the novel for the editor to read. 6. My husband bought a car for me to go to the country whenever I wish. 7. When my child is asleep we never talk in a loud voice for him not to wake up. 8. Dennis phoned her from time to time for her not to say that he had left her. 9. She bought some pictures for us to decorate the flat. 10. Sally switched on the TV for Dick to relax a bit. 11. Eddy advised Sally to take a taxi for her to get to the club as she was late. 12. She put on her bright evening dress for him to notice her at once.

Exercise 12. Paraphrase the sentences using the for-to-infinitive construction as adverbial modifier of purpose.

Model: He bought her a soft and most comfortable armchair so that she could relax. – He bought a soft and most comfortable armchair for her to relax.

1. He took the girl friend to his friends' so that they could tell him what they thought of her as his partner. 2. Felix was sincere and revealed all his secrets so that we could understand that he didn't want to conceal anything. 3. The film producer gave his instructions to the actors so that they didn't make any mistake. 4. Do it so that they could calm down. 5. Don't cry so that they shouldn't feel that you are upset. 6. Choose the way you like so that you might be sure that was your own choice. 7. Open the window so that he could get a breath of fresh air. 8. Shut the door so that nobody could hear us. 9. Let's buy a small television so that the children could watch it when they are alone. 10. Jane bought some apples, flour, sugar and a bottle of milk so that her mother could make an apple pie. 11. She was very careful in choosing the right words so that they did not have a fit. 12. So many people had been exposed to radiation in that region that the doctors did their best so that they could recover.

Exercise 13. Underline the for-to-infinitive construction used as adverbial modifier of result/consequence. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. They had done enough for us to live and respect them. 2. The book is too thick for me to read it on the train. 3. The house is spacious enough for such a family to live in. 4. Our son is too little for us to leave him alone. 5. He was angry enough for his wife to understand that it was impossible to go on talking with him. 6. The problem was too serious for us to solve in haste. 7. The traffic was heavy enough for us not to drive but to go by the underground. 8. We got up early enough for us not to miss the first train. 9. She is too silly for them to hope that she can find a way out herself. 10. The wind was strong enough for the children not to go and have a swim. 11. She talked too fast for us to understand every word. 12. The idea was interesting enough for them to be inspired by it.

Exercise 14. Paraphrase the sentences using a for-to-infinitive construction as adverbial modifier of result/consequence.

Model: She is big enough and we can rely upon her. – She is big enough for us to rely upon her.

1. His father is rather rich and Dick can buy not only a car but a post as well. 2. My friend is too light-minded and you'd better not ask her for help. 3. Freddy can run so fast that you shouldn't compete with him. 4. Lucy was quite clever and they could trust her. 5. Simon is very old and his children can't let him go abroad alone. 6. Rachel's French is very bad and you

shouldn't ask her to interpret. 7. Val can swim rather well and you can invite him to take part in the local sports competitions. 8. Martha's house is pretty large and they can stay with her. 9. The garden is very small and your father can't plant all these trees there. 10. The poem is too long and Mike can't learn it by heart. 11. His voice was pretty low and we could hardly hear what he said. 12. This paper is rather dull and I never subscribe to it.

Exercise 15. Translate the sentences into English. Use a for-to-infinitive construction as adverbial modifier of purpose and result.

1. Она убрала квартиру, чтобы не делать это в воскресенье.
2. Ребенок слишком мал, чтобы вы разрешали ему смотреть такие передачи.
3. Вентилятор слишком маленький, чтобы вы могли проветривать такую большую комнату.
4. День достаточно теплый, чтобы нам поехать искупаться.
5. Отойди, чтобы я мог подвинуть стол.
6. Холодильник слишком мал, чтобы вам использовать его на даче.
7. Возьми книгу в библиотеке, чтобы мне подготовиться к семинару.
8. Купи побольше продуктов, чтобы бабушке не ходить в магазин каждый день.
9. Мы решили о нем позаботиться, чтобы его жена была спокойна.
10. Дом построили, чтобы семьи военных могли получить квартиры.
11. Джек слишком неуравновешен, чтобы мы доверили ему это важное дело.

Exercise 16. Comment on the function of the for-to-infinitive construction.

1. The boy had evidently come in from the garden and was waiting for him to wake.
2. The letter was not meant for anyone but you to read.
3. The scene had affected Isabel too much for her to be able to tell it to me without getting somewhat emotional.
4. He opened the study door, and held it for her to pass in.
5. She stood at the garden gate alone, holding her baby up in her arms for me to see.
6. She stood waiting for the trolley-bus to take her down to the city.
7. He had longed for me to say it without prompting.
8. There is a train tonight at nine. I shall arrange for you to catch it.
9. There was but little room for him to pass, and, as he rode, his horse scraped against the hub of the wheel.
10. There is nothing left for us to add.
11. I left something under your door for you to read it.
12. I suppose it was natural for you to be anxious about the garden party.
13. Godfrey had from the first specified Eppie, then about twelve years old, as a child suitable for them to adopt.
14. And the second point was the one for us to give our minds to.

Revision

Exercise 1. Put *to* before the infinitive wherever necessary.

1. I had rather _ talk to her alone. 2. She could not _ bear _ let Davidson out of her sight. 3. How pleasant it would be _ walk out alone, first along the river and then through the park! 4. I saw a lizard _ run over the crag. 5. He watched her _ ring the bell. 6. The matter must _ be delayed a few days longer. 7. He seems _ want _ let me _ decide for myself. 8. "Come and help me do some shopping," he said. "I need _ buy some presents at once." 9. Justine went to the kitchen and watched Waldo _ come along the path to the side door. 10. "I don't think we need _ go into all that," he said at last. 11. "Understand," he said, "once and for all, I won't have you _ say this sort of things." 12. He felt a choke _ rise in his own throat. 13. He begged her not _ go. 14. Irene's lips moved; she seemed _ be saying: "Where shall I _ go?" 15. It is the first chance I've had _ really contribute to the expenses here. 16. Everyone came out of the house _ admire the new car. 17. A few amber clouds floated in the sky, without a breath of air _ move them. 18. He stood by the creek and heard it _ ripple over the stones. 19. He sat down, and made me _ sit beside him. 20. "I'd better _ get there early," said Roy, "I can _ look after myself."

Exercise 2. State the syntactical function of the infinitive, the infinitive phrase or the infinitive construction.

1. To go far away and quickly was the only thing to do. 2. I felt Matty touch me on the shoulder. 3. It was easy to see that each minute Mouldy and Ripston grew more and more alarmed at my condition. 4. She was going to the station with him, to drive the car back. 5. "I am sorry to have heard bad news of Mr. Barkis," said I. 6. There is no time to lose. 7. I should like to have known him. 8. I believe you to be writing letters in the morning room. 9. He rose with alacrity, and began to select books for me from his shelves. 10. She had turned her head to speak to her boy. 11. It was light enough to take the short cut, and she climbed the first stile into the field path. 12. I have no one in the world to go to. Do not send me away! 13. She turned her head, he saw her hand make a little flitting gesture. 14. And she had always and consistently urged him to get a job. 15. He wanted to tell her of the incident, longed suddenly to end their period of strife. 16. Annie got up to clear the table. 17. She was the first to speak. 18. I was too much disturbed to go to bed myself. 19. Minny made Sarah sit in the one comfortable chair close to the fire. 20. I used to see you looking at flowers, and trees, and those ducks. 21. I had some questions to ask him. 22. He was the last man in the world to be troubled by any such considerations. 23. Alice didn't seem to have heard me. 24. The Gadfly was difficult to convince. 25. We understand your income to be two thousand pounds. 26. This

unexpected offer of shelter was too tempting to be resisted. 27. Can I give you anything to eat or to drink? 28. I heard Mounteney whisper to Martin: to my astonishment he seemed to be asking what was the matter with me. 29. To surprise them would be better. 30. The time for the Committee meeting had been set for seven o'clock in the evening, in order to accommodate Lyman. 31. The old gardener had finished his morning job and came with a little basket to feed the doves. 32. Paper is said to have been invented in China. 33. She refused to answer him. 34. The tower seemed to rock in the wind.

Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Она удивилась, узнав, что в Великобритании левостороннее движение. 2. Было бы интересно поговорить о его впечатлениях о Великобритании. 3. У меня нет никакого желания путешествовать морем. Меня укачивает. 4. У нас совсем нет времени, чтобы тратить его попусту. Только что объявили наш рейс. 5. Он не такой человек, который может попасть в аварию. Он водит машину очень осторожно. 6. Мы боялись заблудиться, поэтому остановились, чтобы осмотреться. 7. Джон опытный водитель. Я часто вижу, как он водит машину во время гонок. 8. Мне повезло (посчастливилось) увидеть Плисецкую на сцене (как Плисецкая танцует на сцене). 9. Я думаю, что самый быстрый способ добраться до Москвы – это полететь самолетом. 10. Нельзя терять время. Самолет должен вылететь ровно в 10. 11. Наконец-то она согласилась, чтобы ее проводили на вокзал. 12. Я не смогла сдать экзамен по вождению. Я превысила скорость. 13. Ехать на север Шотландии было очень приятно. Пейзаж был таким живописным. 14. Говорят, что шотландцы серьезные и осторожные люди. 15. Казалось, спектакль ему не понравился. Хотя декорации были хорошие, игра актеров была слабой. 16. Я случайно повернул не в ту сторону и потерялся. 17. Известно, что первая постановка чеховской «Чайки» была провалом. 18. Вылет самолета задерживался, но мы остались в накопителе и ждали, когда объявят наш рейс. 19. Движение транспорта на улицах (уличное движение) было столь интенсивным, что мы не могли быстро ехать и вскоре попали в пробку. 20. Я стояла на перроне, ожидая прибытия поезда. 21. У нас кончился бензин. Нам ничего не остается делать, как голосовать и просить проезжающих водителей подвезти нас. 22. Почему бы не подождать еще немного? Поезд должен прибыть (прибывает) в 9, а сейчас только 8:50. 23. Мы только что прошли регистрацию. Следующее, что нужно сделать, это пройти таможенно. 24. Находясь на борту корабля, она была слишком взволнована, чтобы вымолвить хоть слово. 25. Национальная Галерея слишком большая, чтобы ее осмотреть за час.

PARTICIPLE I

Participle I is a non-finite form of the verb which has some adjectival and adverbial features. It's formed by adding the suffix –ing to the stem of the verb.

The verbal character of Participle I is manifested morphologically in the categories of voice and perfect and syntactically in its combinability. It may combine: a) with a noun or a pronoun as a direct, indirect or prepositional object; b) with an adverb or a prepositional phrase as an adverbial modifier; c) with a noun or adjective as a predicative.

a) Having left her umbrella at home, she soaked to the skin.

b) Rising early, you'll make your days longer.

c) Being absent minded, he lost his glasses.

The adjectival and adverbial characteristics of Participle I are manifested in its syntactical functions a) as an attribute and b) an adverbial modifier.

e.g. a) Here is the telegram announcing his arrival.

b) Having written the letter he went to post it.

The morphological categories of Participle I

Participle I has only two morphological categories, those of voice and perfect.

Perfect \ Voice	Active	Passive
Non-perfect	going showing	– being shown
Perfect	having gone having shown	– having been shown

The category of perfect in Participle I finds its expression in the contrast of the non-perfect and perfect forms.

The non-perfect form suggests that the action denoted by Participle I is simultaneous with that of the finite verb.

e.g. Making a tour of England we were struck by its “park-like” appearance.

The perfect form of Participle I indicates that the action denoted by the participle is prior to that denoted by the finite verb.

e.g. Having visited the museum we decided to have dinner.

Non-perfect Participle I expresses immediate priority with some verbs of sense perception and motion, such as *to see, to hear, to find, to come, to enter, to arrive, to turn, to leave, to close, to open, to pass, to cross, to put, to put on, to take, to take off, to seize, to grasp, etc.*

e.g. Arriving at the station, he found his train gone.

Hearing a noise in the garden, I looked out of the window.

The Perfect Participle of the same verbs is used when there is a lapse of time between the two actions, or when the action denoted by the participle is durative.

e.g. Seeing Jane, I refused to greet her.

Not having seen her for a long time, I didn't recognize her.

Sometimes the Perfect Participle is used to emphasize priority.

Participle I of transitive verbs has voice distinctions, which are realized in the contrast of active and passive forms.

Participle I active denotes an action directed from the doer of the action, while Participle I passive denotes an action directed towards it.

e.g. Do you know the students translating the text?

Have you read the text being translated by the students?

Having been written long ago the manuscript was illegible.

Exercise 1. State whether the action expressed by Participle I is prior or simultaneous with the action of the verb-predicate.

1. I kept silence for a little while, thinking of what my mother had told me. 2. But I wasn't listening, absorbing the atmosphere of canvases I now knew so well. 3. She was lying in the dark, listening to a violin being played several rooms away. 4. "Tea," I said, setting the big white cup in front of him. 5. Buttoning her raincoat up to her throat and knotting a scarf round her hair she went to Victoria Street. 6. Getting up, I ran impulsively across the room and flung my arms round her neck. 7. She is working in a laundry on the East Side, trying to keep her child's body and soul together. 8. Stella stood openly waiting with the look of one for whom the ordinary rules did not apply. 9. Listening with sympathy, watching the play of light upon those clean-cut features, Stephen was conscious of a deep surge of affection for his brother. 10. One evening in the following spring Mr. Green, having shut up his shop, took his customary stroll towards the road. 11. Gripping his bag, Manson leaped from the train and walked quickly down the platform, searching eagerly for some sign of welcome. 12. I was sitting in the café, reading a newspaper. 13. I wandered about looking at the pictures I knew so well and let my fancy play idly at the emotions they suggested. 14. Turning back to the first page he wrote at the top: "Ballet Shoes". 15. "Why did you invite Barry?" Ann Brown asked, reddening. 16. A moment later the other sailor climbed beside him, then both stood idly smoking and talking.

Exercise 2.

a) Make new sentences using Participle I Non-Perfect Active.

Model: We thought we had been late for the train. We went home. – Thinking we had been late for the train, we went home.

1. The secretary tried to get to the office on time. She drove too fast and got a ticket. 2. I knew the director had already left. I didn't try to call his office. 3. Kate didn't understand the theme. She didn't attend her classes. 4. She is a little deaf. She wears hearing-aid. 5. I didn't know his address. I couldn't contact him. 6. Mr. Smith is on the Board of Directors. He makes very important decisions. 7. Dick burnt himself. He was baking an apple pie. 8. Janet works for an advertising agency. She has the opportunity to meet many interesting people. 9. The old man was walking along the street. He was talking to himself. 10. I'll be a member of the country club; I'll be able to use a golf course next summer. 11. The man slipped. He was getting off the bus. 12. We considered the rising cost of gasoline. We thought about buying a small car. 13. He got off his horse. He began searching something on the ground.

b) Make new sentences using Participle I Non-Perfect Passive.

Model: This car is now sold everywhere. It's very much in demand. – Now being sold everywhere, this car is very much in demand.

1. Our company is highly centralized; it operates very efficiently. 2. These sweaters are made by hand; they are more expensive than the other brands. 3. He was exhausted by his work; he threw himself on his bed. 4. English is spoken in many countries; it's a useful language to know. 5. The speaker refused to continue; he was interrupted by the interruptions. 6. The new benefit plan wasn't approved by the director; it had to be revised. 7. Insurance premiums won't be paid by the company; they'll be deducted from the employee's paycheck. 8. They were impressed by the duel scene in "Hamlet"; they were silent on the way home. 9. The plane was delayed by technical problems. It took off one hour later.

c) Make new sentences using Participle I Perfect Active.

Model: I had read that book a lot of times. I had no desire to reread it. – Having read the book a lot of times, I had no desire to reread it.

1. I had heard that the caves were dangerous. I didn't like to go any further without a light. 2. The pilot had travelled only a short distance from Heathrow. He decided to turn back. 3. I had seen the film several times. I didn't want to go to the cinema. 4. We barricaded the windows. We discussed our plan. 5. The criminal removed all traces of the crime. He left the building. 6. He had spent all his money. He decided to go home and ask his father for a job. 7. He found his revolver. He loaded it. He sat down facing the door. 8. He fed the dog. He sat down to his own dinner.

d) Make new sentences using Participle I Perfect Passive.

Model: She had been asked that question a lot of times. She knew the answer very well. – Having been asked that question a lot of times. She knew the answer very well.

1. Tom had been seriously injured; he spent a month in hospital. 2. The problem hadn't been discovered in time; it couldn't be solved before year-end. 3. This machine hasn't been used for years; it should be replaced by a modern one. 4. The applicants have been screened by the personnel director, they all have the necessary qualifications. 5. The car has been washed already. It's very clean.

Exercise 3. Use Participle I in the appropriate form instead of the infinitive in brackets.

1. I saw Blanche little by little (to try) all her tricks. 2. She smiled (to remember) the joke. 3. I came down here, (to think) that I would get over it. 4. She drank deeply, and, (to do) so, sighed with satisfaction. 5. Again the hands rose eloquently, (to express) better than words could do Mr. Hercule Poirot's sense of utter outrage. 6. And (to do) this he threw himself back on the sofa. 7. "This is your grandmother," Ann was saying (to touch) the boy's hair gently. 8. (To be) so far away he still feels himself part of the community. 9. The boy came out of the water (to shake) from top to toe. 10. (To support) her by the arm he helped her out of the taxi. 11. He decided to speak to her in the train (to come) home. 12. The next minute the front door was flung open and he was in the lighted hall (to greet) by a short, plump, smiling woman of about forty. 13. (to invite) down to this place for a visit, he found himself requested by his host to go and tell his uncle bedtime stories. 14. I stood for a moment at the window, (to look) at the gaiety of the day. 15. (to finish) his toilet, he wrapped himself in a thick overcoat and wound a muffler round his neck. 16. And (to reach) the conclusion, he gave no further thought to the matter. 17. That night, (to go) up to his room he thought of his unpleasant duty. 18. He turned (to inspect) me from beneath his enormous eyebrows. 19. A new road will soon be built (to connect) the plant with the railway station. 20. He speaks like a man (to take) his opinion of everything. 21. (Not to know) that she could trust them she did not know what to do. 22. Sam, feeling that the interview, (to reach) this point might be considered over, got up. 23. I spent about ten minutes (to turn) over the sixteen pages of *The Guardian* before I found the main news and articles.

Exercise 4. Translate what is given in brackets using Participle I in the appropriate form.

1. (Закрыв) the door with only the lightest slam, they went out together. 2. Julia sat eating rolls and drinking coffee in her room next morning, (думая) what she should do. 3. "Come along, quickly," said Nick (держа) the door of the driving cabin, "you're coming too." 4. He got up from his chair and (подойдя) to a shelf brought me a large album. 5. I kept silence for a while, (думая) of what Stroeve had told me. 6. When she had finished she sat (установившись) in front of her for some minutes. 7. I went out on to the landing, and cautiously down the stairs, (надеясь) that one of the doors would be open. 8. Snow was falling now in soft, large flakes, (покрывая) the red roofs. 9. Men wandered about, (глядя) at the women (сидящих) at their windows reading or sewing. 10. (Выбив) the pipe he inspected it as though it demanded all his attention.

Participle I as attribute

This function is peculiar to Non-Perfect Participle I in its main sense, that of a process simultaneous with the action denoted by the main verb or with the moment of speech. It corresponds to the Russian imperfective participle, usually active: *leading – ведущий, asking – спрашивающий*. The passive participle I corresponds to the Russian imperfective passive participle: *being asked – спрашиваемый, being translated – переводимый*.

When a participial phrase is used as attribute it follows the modified noun. A participial phrase may be a) non-detached or b) detached.

e.g. a) We went along the street leading to the seashore.

b) Once a month Tommy, arriving separately, came in for a brief drink.

A detached participial phrase is set off from the modified noun by a comma (or commas) in writing and by a pause (or pauses) in speech.

When a single participle is used as attribute, it generally functions as a premodifier. Here we usually find only Participle I active of transitive verbs: *living people, a sleeping dog*.

When a prior action is meant no Participle I can be used as attribute, only an attributive clause is used.

e.g. The student who has shown Great Britain on the map is going to his seat.

Exercise 1. Point out the participle or participial phrase used as an attribute. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I could hear the voices of the kids waiting for the school bell to ring.
2. I reached for a cigarette with trembling hands, and lit it. 3. The boy, climb-

ing the tree to get birds' eggs, had a bad fall. 4. Passing the Comedy Theatre I happened to look up and saw the clouds lit by the setting sun. 5. The wardrobe was empty, except for one dress, swinging on a hanger. 6. The scientists researching the causes of cancer are making progress. 7. The question now being discussed at the meeting is very important. 8. There was nothing to be seen or heard, not even a barking dog. 9. People sleeping in the next room were wakened by the sound of breaking glass. 10. The door was opened by one of the men-servants, bearing an envelope, addressed to me in Collingwood's bold hand. 11. A desolate loneliness settled on me – almost a frightening loneliness. 12. The rising sun was hidden by the clouds. 13. The large house being built in our street is a new school.

Exercise 2. Complete the following notices and announcements by choosing suitable participles from the box below. Do not use any participle more than once.

wishing	exciting	telling	amazing	meeting	missing
starting	arriving	wearing	no-parking	rising	

1. Romania won the Cup after a very ... match. 2. Every month the company which has issued you the credit card sends you a report ... about your expenses. 3. Adrian Mailer, a pilot of the wrecked flight TWA 005 tells us of his ... escape from the jungle captivity. 4. The police are searching for the ... child. 5. Friends and relatives ... passengers from New Delhi are advised that flight BA 763 has been delayed. 6. The Government policy is blamed for ... prices. 7. Students ... the MBA programme on Monday should arrive by 8.30. 8. Passengers ... to smoke should sit at the rear of the bus. 9. Cars left in a ... zone will be removed. 10. The train ... at platform two is the 10.45 to Reading. 11. Any guest not ... a tie will be asked to leave.

Exercise 3. Transform the following sentences so as to use attributive clauses.

Model: At ten o'clock he found himself in the train speeding towards London. – At ten o'clock he found himself in the train which was speeding towards London.

1. He went to the parlour, where the doctor, standing on the hearthrug with his back to the fire, greeted him. 2. The place was crowded with doctors and their wives, talking and laughing. 3. I've just had a letter from my aunt asking me to go down to her place and stay. 4. It was quite dark and she didn't recognize the man standing in front of her. 5. We passed into a large sunny apartment looking out towards the sea. 6. Most people living in out-

of-the-way places when the mail comes tear open impatiently their papers. 7. A little way off he saw his wife talking with the Davidsons and he strolled over to her. 8. He picked up a chattering acquaintance with several persons living in his hotel and he was not lonely. 9. There were people passing to and fro and he joined one of the groups. 10. It appears he caught sight of a man behaving suspiciously. 11. Nick looked on at the moon, coming up over the hills.

Exercise 4. Transform the following sentences so as to use Participle I where possible.

1. The ship, which had arrived at the dock that afternoon, had taken fourteen days to cross the Atlantic. 2. The man who made a report yesterday came back from the USA. 3. And then, quite unexpectedly, he received a message from Mr. Anderson, who asked him to call at the company offices. 4. We went to see our friends who had just returned from a voyage. 5. The photograph which had so excited the young man the day before was nowhere to be seen now. 6. He had a massive gold watch, which had belonged to his father. 7. He was never at a loss for a remark; he could discourse on the topics of the day with an ease that prevented his hearer from experiencing any sense of strain. 8. The conferences, which are held at the University every year, are devoted to ecological problems. 9. Going upstairs she woke the woman who lived on the floor above her. 10. I looked at the people who were lying on the beach. 11. They got into the car which smelt of hot leather and petrol. 12. The man who phoned you yesterday is waiting for you downstairs. 13. I don't suppose he ever lived in a house that had a bathroom till he was fifty. 14. I noticed as we walked along the street that sometimes the men who passed us stared at my girl-friend. 15. It was a long, wide, straight street that ran parallel with the Vauxhall Bridge. 16. He followed her across the lawn to the table which stood in the shade of a fine tree. 17. The woman who is working in the garden is my sister. 18. I caught sight of a lean man, who was moving in the opposite direction. 19. Over the fence which divided the garden from the one next door a familiar face was peering. 20. The sidewalks were crowded with people who were watching the carnival. 21. Anyone who wishes to check out earlier may do so.

Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Он внимательно смотрел на мальчика, сидевшего на стуле у окна. 2. Девушка, читавшая книгу, вдруг встала и вышла из комнаты. 3. Книги, которые лежат на столе, принадлежат моему отцу. 4. Они

вышли на дорогу, которая вела в лес. 5. Машина, которая следовала за нами, была зеленого цвета. 6. Старик, работавший в саду, не сразу заметил меня. 7. Высокий мужчина, стоящий у окна, когда-то работал с моим отцом. 8. Мы присоединились к Марроу, который стоял у гостиницы и ждал нас. 9. Каждый, кто желает научиться плавать, может приходиться в бассейн по пятницам. 10. Мальчика, который разбил окно, зовут Том. 11. Туристы, посещающие наш город, как правило, живут в этой гостинице. 12. Студенты, читавшие этот текст, говорят, что он труден для перевода. 13. Он заметил, что джентльмен, пристально смотревший на него, делает ему какие-то знаки. 14. Они жили в доме, принадлежавшем ее бабушке. 15. Он смотрел на людей, которые проходили мимо его дома. 16. Деревья, растущие перед нашим домом, посажены моим дедом. 17. Человек, принесший письмо от Артура, хотел поговорить с нами наедине. 18. Мери, переводившая статью, даже не взглянула на меня. 19. Студенты, ожидавшие вас, только что ушли. 20. Потом он посмотрел на картину, висевшую на стене, и спросил, где я ее купил. 21. Они часто думали о своих друзьях, работавших во Франции. 22. Наши друзья, работавшие во Франции, только что вернулись в Лондон. 23. Девушка, продававшая фиалки, была удивительно красива. 24. Я знаю человека, говорящего на пяти иностранных языках.

Participle I as predicative

In the position of predicative only Non-Perfect Participle I active occurs. Although keeping the form of the participle, it is treated as an adjective, or a deverbal adjective.

e.g. The effect of her words was terrifying.

The whole damned day had been humiliating.

Exercise 1. Complete the sentences with the participles from the box. Never use any participle more than once. The first sentence has been done for you.

astonishing	boring	convincing	demanding	disappointing
worrying	exciting	thrilling	tempting	disconcerting
touching	humiliating	encouraging	mocking	terrifying

1. The film "Gone with the Wind" is so exciting, I advise you to see it. 2. Your suggestion to miss the classes at university today sounds very ... 3. I don't believe you to have done it deliberately. But anyway, it was extremely ... 4. The situation became so ... that we all were at a loss.

5. Her gravity was not severe and ... like a school teacher's, but warm and ... as a mother's. 6. When the chairman speaks of devotion to high ideals in business, he is quite ... and even 7. The performance was so ... that I could hardly stay till the end of it. 8. That she can't remember the origin of her information seems very unusual and ..., inspector. 9. The effect of the manager's words was 10. I should say, your last trip to investigate the tribes in the Amazon basin has been dangerous. Even to listen to the story of your adventures is really 11. It's ... to me that Mr. Lincoln didn't understand your mission. His voice sounded ..., and the tone in which he spoke with you was so

Exercise 2. Answer the questions using Participle I as predicative.

1. Does it sound tempting for you to miss a class of English? 2. It's rather confusing when somebody calls you by name, and you don't remember who he or she is, isn't it? 3. Sharon Stone is very charming, isn't she? 4. Does it sometimes become rather annoying for you to listen to heavy metal being played by your roommates all night when you are getting ready for your exam? 5. Life seems extremely boring when there is nothing interesting to do. Do you share this opinion? 6. The weather becomes depressing when it's been raining all day long, doesn't it? 7. Is it really disgusting when the kitchen hasn't been cleaned for ages? 8. I know Jack didn't enjoy the last night's football match. Did it happen to be less exciting than he had expected? 9. It's sometimes embarrassing when you have to ask people for money, isn't it? 10. Would it be amazing for you to get a job of an advertising manager right after graduating from university?

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences using Participle I as predicative.

1. Great heavy tears ran down her face, and her quietness was terribly (to move). 2. Tom was slim and graceful in his long white trousers. She had never seen him smoke a pipe. It was strangely (to touch). 3. I hate seeing you pay the bill when we go out to supper. It's so (to humiliate). 4. The sight of the stormy sea was (to terrify). 5. The examining board expected this student to give a good answer, but the answer was (to disappoint). 6. The USA is a big country. The climate contrasts are quite (to strike). 7. Bob prefers mountain scenery to plains. It's always (to excite). 8. The rare varieties of the flowers in the meadow and the wood were (to astonish), saying nothing of the beautiful lake. 9. The children sat round the fire. Friendly stars were twinkling overhead, but the dark hills round the valley seemed (to frighten). 10. The "park-like" appearance of Great Britain is (to strike).

Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into English using Participle I as predicative.

1. Ее слова звучали убедительно. 2. Сегодня жара ужасающая. 3. Я не люблю море. Оно никогда не было соблазнительным для меня. 4. – Вам понравилась поездка? – Это было захватывающе! 5. – Вам понравилось море? – О, да! Оно было такое манящее! 6. Штормовое море выглядело ужасающе. 7. Красота Лондонских парков ошеломляющая. 8. Поход в горы был очень волнующий. 9. Его слова были оскорбительны для Анны. 9. К сожалению, ответ студента был разочаровывающий.

Participle I as parenthesis

Participle I as parenthesis forms the headword of a participial phrase, the meaning of which is a comment upon the contents of the whole sentence or sometimes part of it.

Participle I Non-Perfect Active is used in such phrases as *generally speaking*, *judging by appearance (words)*, *mildly speaking (saying)*, *speaking frankly*, *strictly speaking*, *saying nothing of*, *roughly speaking*, *putting it mildly*, *allowing for*, *taking everything in consideration*, etc.

e.g. Judging from what you say, he ought to succeed.

Exercise 1. Complete the following sentences using Participle I as parenthesis.

1. ... you are the last person I expected to see here. 2. ... we have only his word for it. 3. ..., it is not at all unusual. 4. ..., it was a horrifying thing to happen. 5. ... they enjoyed the scenery. 6. ..., a stay at the seaside is a good idea of a good holiday. 7. ..., I am afraid of bathing. 8. ..., you are hard to please, aren't you?

Exercise 2. Make up sentences of your own using the following participial phrases.

Generally speaking mildly saying strictly speaking roughly speaking
judging by words speaking frankly saying nothing of

Exercise 3. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Откровенно говоря, я сыт по горло ее жалобами. 2. Мягко говоря, ей нелегко угодить. 3. Судя по его словам, он посетил Лондон. 4. Откровенно говоря, мне бы очень хотелось посетить США. 5. Судя по его ответу, он хорошо подготовил тему. 6. Грубо говоря, ваш ответ не заслуживает положительную оценку. 7. Строго говоря, курение вредно для здоровья.

Participle I as adverbial modifier

a) adverbial modifier of time

Participle I as adverbial modifier of time may denote a simultaneous or a prior action. Here it corresponds to the Russian adverbial participle (деепричастие).

Non-Perfect Participle I active, when used as an adverbial modifier of time, usually conveys the meaning of the motion or state. Most often it is a participle of the verbs of motion (*come, walk, go*), or position in space (*sit, lie, stand*).

e.g. Walking along the track, Bowen burst into song.

Returning to London, Arthur had thrown himself into the work.

The notion of simultaneity may be expressed more explicitly by the conjunctions *when* and *while*.

e.g. Don't forget articles when speaking English.

Participle I Passive in this function usually denotes priority.

e.g. Being left alone, Paulina and I kept silence for some time.

Perfect Participle I as adverbial modifier of time, always denotes a prior action.

e.g. They wrote because they had to, and having written, thought only of what they were going to write next.

Note: Participle I of the verb *to be* is not used as adverbial modifier of time. We use “when (while)-phrase” or a clause instead.

e.g. While in Moscow (= While I was in Moscow) I visited the Kremlin.

Exercise 1. Point out the participial phrase used as adverbial modifier of time. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. Learning the topic “The geographical position of Great Britain”, he remembered that he had forgotten to buy the map of Great Britain. 2. While getting breakfast ready, the girls began to light the camp fire. 3. When in England she couldn't help admiring its park-like appearance. 4. Coming to the Lake District, we put up our tents on the boundary of the lake. 5. Studying the map of Great Britain, he found all the mountains and rivers on it. 6. When driving in London itself she had an immediate knowledge of its streets as any taxi-driver. 7. While eating and drinking they talked loudly in order that all present might hear what they said. 8. While walking to the pond across the meadow, the two friends saw a lot of funny grasshoppers hopping here and there. 9. When in the Lake District, the tourists saw lots of lovely lakes. 10. Being asked to give his impressions of the Lake District he did it willing-

ly. 11. Hearing the drumming of the rain on the roof of the house in the night, the children woke up. 12. Having crawled into his cosy sleeping-bag, Mr. Ball fell fast asleep. 13. Having been given two loaves of fresh home-baked bread, they left the farmyard. 14. Having arrived in front of the house, she put her hands to her mouth in trumpet form and shouted: "I! I! I! Sally!"

Exercise 2. Join the pairs of sentences, using Participle I as adverbial modifier of time.

Model: We finished our work. We went home. – Having finished our work, we went home.

1. He was taken ill. He was travelling by air from New York to London. 2. He did his homework. Then he went to the skating-rink. 3. They found the money. Then they began quarrelling about how to use it. 4. He was reading a book. He came across an old and valuable map. 5. She looked out of the window. She saw the neighbour's children planting a tree. 6. He seized a sheet of paper and a pen. He began to write something. 7. We visited the museum. Then we decided to have lunch in the park. 8. She entered the room suddenly. She found them smoking. 9. I turned on the light. I was astonished at what I saw. 10. He entered the room. He took off the hat. 11. John was doing his English. He was interrupted several times. 12. He often writes letters. He dislikes to be bothered. 13. He climbed the hill. Then he sat down to have a rest. 14. He was a school boy. He used to play chess with his father. 15. She finished the painting. Then she gave a sigh of relief. 16. The captain was warned that bad weather lay ahead. Then he changed the course. 17. The workmen were digging the foundation of a new office block. They unearthed the remains of a Roman villa. 18. Billy did his task. Then he presented it to his supervisor. 19. We finished with the prices. Then we decided to comment on the delivery dates. 20. I was working for a multinational company in Holland. I learned to admire the Dutch for their good nature and tolerance.

Exercise 3. Replace the adverbial clauses of time by the appropriate form of Participle I.

Model: When you speak English, pay attention to the intonation. – (When) speaking English, pay attention to the intonation.

1. When I entered the room, I felt some change in the atmosphere at once. 2. When she had cut the bread, she started to make the coffee. 3. When the shop assistant discovered that he had a talent for music, he gave up his job to become a professional singer. 4. You must have much practice when you are learning to speak a foreign language. 5. When they had finally opened the

safe, they found that most of the papers had gone. 6. When I visit a strange city, I like to have a guide-book with me. 7. When they were travelling in Central Africa, the explorers met many wild animals. 8. When Ann opened the parcel, she saw a large box of pencils. 9. When you are leaving the room, don't forget to turn off the light. 10. When the editor learned that his newspaper had been taken over by another publisher, he resigned from his position. 11. When we had finally reached the river, we decided to stay there and wait for the others. 12. When you begin to work with the dictionary, don't forget my instructions. 13. When I reached out in the darkness, I felt a stone wall where I expected to find the door. 14. When she closed the suitcase, she put it on the bed. 15. When you speak English, pay attention to the order of words. 16. When she had closed and locked the suitcase, she rang for the porter to come and take it downstairs. 17. When you are copying English texts, pay attention to the articles. 18. After I had written this exercise, I began to doubt whether it was correct. 19. After he was shown in, he was told to take off his coat and wait for a while.

Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into English using Participle I as adverbial modifier of time.

1. Будьте осторожны, пересекая улицу. 2. Написав сочинение, она начала переводить текст. 3. Он заснул, сидя в кресле под деревом. 4. Закрыв за ней дверь, он вернулся в свою комнату. 5. Взглянув на закрытую дверь, молодой человек подошел поближе. 6. Попрошавшись, они вышли из комнаты. 7. Сняв старое платье, она надела новое. 8. Хлопнув дверью, он вышел из дома. 9. Приблизившись к центру города, он остановился и позвонил Милли. 10. Закрыв окно, он подошел к письменному столу. 11. Когда он был молодым, он часто ездил в командировку за границу. 12. Выглянув из окна, он увидел свою сестру с друзьями. 13. Войдя в комнату, она сразу же увидела там Тома. 14. Объяснив все подробно, он спокойно сел на свое место. 15. Выйдя из машины, он медленно пошел в сторону дома. 16. Я снова встретил его в аэропорту по возвращении домой. 17. Оставив вещи в камере хранения, мы пошли осматривать город. 18. Путешествуя по стране, мы познакомились со многими достопримечательностями. 19. Прибыв в город, мы отправились в гостиницу. 20. Просматривая старые журналы, я нашла интересную статью о Великобритании. 21. Ожидая трамвая, я увидел старика, который пристально смотрел на меня. 22. Когда его спросили, намерен ли он скоро возвращаться, он ответил, что будет отсутствовать около трех месяцев. 23. После того, как товары были просушены и рассортированы, они были помещены на

склад. 24. Увидев меня, он сказал улыбнувшись, «Я очень рад вас видеть». 25. Когда я смотрел этот фильм, я вспоминал свое детство. 26. Рассказывая детям сказки, она говорит разными голосами, имитируя героев сказок.

b) adverbial modifier of cause (reason)

All the four forms of the Participle are used in this function. The most frequently used non-perfect Participles I are those of verbs denoting mental perception and emotions: *knowing, realizing, remembering, expecting, hoping, fearing*, also the participles *being* and *having*.

e.g. Hoping to catch the train, we took a taxi.

Being there, I could see all.

Having been left alone, the children felt miserable and lonely.

Having lost the book, the student couldn't prepare the topic.

Being impressed by the film, they were silent on the way home.

Exercise 1. Point out the participial phrase used as adverbial modifier of cause. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. Knowing well the English landscape, she wasn't struck by its "park-like" appearance. 2. Being covered with leaf and flower in summer, the hedges look very beautiful. 3. Having studied the map of Great Britain, she began to learn the topic. 4. There are many rivers in Britain. Having been joined by canals, they make it possible to travel by water from one end of England to the other. 5. Knowing Terry would raise hell, Quigly nonetheless stayed for most of the party. 6. Soams already regretting his impulse, raised his own hat in response. 7. He was not surprised to see her, having been informed about her arrival beforehand. 8. He wished to say something sympathetic, but being an Englishman, could only turn away his eyes. 9. I hadn't slept the night before, and, having eaten a heavy lunch, was agreeably drowsy. 10. Knowing that she couldn't trust Jim, she sent Peter instead. 11. He couldn't join his friends, being still busy in the laboratory. 12. Being confused by his joke, she blushed. 13. Having been informed of their arrival beforehand, he was better prepared to meet them than anyone of us.

Exercise 2. Join the sentences using Participle I as adverbial modifier of cause (reason).

Model: She is a kind-hearted girl. She is loved by everybody. – Being a kind-hearted girl, she is loved by everybody.

1. You've promised to give him every assistance. You can't go back on your word. 2. It's a pity I don't know French. So I couldn't understand what

they were talking about at yesterday's meeting. 3. He found no one at home. He left the house in a bad temper. 4. I came here this afternoon. I thought I might find Carry. 5. I paused. I didn't know how to express myself. 6. The book is written in simple English. It's suitable for beginners. 7. He wasn't surprised to see her. He had been informed about her arrival. 8. Mel stopped. He realized he was talking to himself. 9. She didn't want to hear the story again. She had heard it all before. 10. She moved away. She felt slightly embarrassed. 11. She asked me to help her. She realized she couldn't move it alone. 12. She didn't know that she couldn't trust Jim. She left for London on her own. 13. She had decided it was a proper thing to do. She was surprised when she got absolutely no results. 14. She stared back. She didn't know what to do. 15. He offered to show us the way home. He thought we were lost. 16. She is a little deaf. She wears hearing-aid. 17. She is rich. She can afford expensive holidays.

Exercise 3. Replace the adverbial clauses of cause by the appropriate form of Participle I.

Model: As I had just eaten, I wasn't hungry. – Having just eaten, I wasn't hungry.

1. As the English people are fond of gardening, they grow beautiful gardens. 2. As the students had been supplied with the necessary equipment, they decided to get to the top of the mountain. 3. As he was extremely interested in building ships, he visited the shipbuilding yards of Newcastle. 4. As these forests had been taken good care of for many years, they gave a good supply of timber. 5. As she had realized the value of his advice she followed it and went to one of the resorts on the south-eastern coast. 6. We were tired and thirsty, for we had been on the road since 8 o'clock in the morning, and it was a hot day. 7. As he didn't know the way to the station very well he often stopped to ask people who were passing by. 8. As she was seven she often wore a short brown velvet frock. 9. As he was a great adviser of music he attended all the concerts. 10. As I had seen nothing like that before I was eager to see the performance. 11. As he had witnessed the crime, he was expected to give evidence in court. 12. As she had been walking most of the night, she felt tired and sleepy. 13. As she had spent most of her housekeeping money, she reluctantly decided to go home. 14. As she had not had any lunch, she wanted her tea badly.

Exercise 4. Complete the following sentences using Participle I as adverbial modifier of cause.

1. ... I couldn't get in touch with him. 2. Sophia had heard very little ... 3. ... he has no sense of what is wrong or right. 4. ... the Germans are

respected by most Europeans. 5. He kept silence ... 6. He found the hotel without difficulty, ... 7. She didn't return with us ... 8. He wasn't listening ... 9. ... they ran again. 10. ... he tried to telephone her. 11. ... he got a very good education.

Exercise 5. Translate into English using Participle I as adverbial modifier of cause.

1. Так как он хорошо знал английский язык, он перевел статью без словаря. 2. Прожив в этом городе всю свою жизнь, он знал его очень хорошо. 3. Потеряв адрес своего старого друга, я не смог навестить его, когда был в командировке в его городе. 4. Так как товары были упакованы в прочные мешки, они прибыли в хорошем состоянии. 5. Не понимая этого правила, она попросила преподавателя объяснить ей его еще раз. 6. Поскольку она была умной и доброй, все любили и уважали ее. 7. Проработав весь день на солнце, я чувствовал себя уставшим. 8. Я не смог переодеться, так как оставил свои вещи на вокзале. 9. Так как я сам раньше некоторое время работал в этой области, я понимал его. 10. Не видев ее много лет, он не узнал ее сначала. 11. Так как профессор был болен, он не смог прочитать лекцию в понедельник. 12. Не зная, что делать, она села на диван и уставилась на картину, висевшую на стене напротив. 13. Имея много времени, мы решили пойти на вокзал пешком. 14. Так как мы очень устали, мы моментально уснули. 15. Они смогли принять активное участие в обсуждении доклада, так как хорошо знали данный вопрос.

c) adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances and manner

The adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances is one of the most characteristic of participle I. In this case participle I denotes some action or event parallel to the action or state denoted by the finite verb.

e.g. He was standing on the top of the mountain admiring the beautiful view.

I spent the morning on the cliff reading.

Participle I as an adverbial modifier of manner is akin to an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances. The difference consists in the fact that an adverbial modifier of manner characterizes the action of the finite verb, whereas that of attendant circumstances denotes a parallel action or event.

e.g. He came in carrying a big parcel.

Exercise 1. Point out the participial phrase used as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances (manner). Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. He was standing on the top of the mountain admiring the beautiful view. 2. They sat down in the heather for a rest enjoying the view. 3. He peered at her, blinking. 4. He got out of his seat and walked over and stood in front of Janet and Mary, looking down at them. 5. He writes a long letter to his critic, telling him he is very sorry he thought his book was bad. 6. Sitting in the heather the watchers were looking at the sheep on the hill. 7. I sat quite silent, watching her face, a strong and noble face. 8. The door opened and he entered, carrying his head as though it held some fatal secret. 9. "What a nice lunch," said Ann, eating the sugar at the bottom of her coffee cup. 10. I sat on the doorstep holding my little sister in my arms.

Exercise 2. Use the participles given below as adverbial modifiers of attendant circumstances (manner): *thinking, holding, looking, smoking, reading, speaking, counting, putting, shaking, remembering, fighting.*

1. He has been in three revolutions ... on the barricades. 2. He lay on the sofa ... 3. She was standing behind the screen door, ... it open and ... to him from the doorstep. 4. She smiled and closed her eyes ... his words. 5. He sat for a long time ... 6. He sat in the armchair ... a newspaper. 7. He said good-bye to her ... her hand in a friendly manner. 8. They stood there, mother and son, ... at the stranger. 9. The customs officer stood on deck ... the boxes. 10. He sat down at the table ... his hat on the chair.

Exercise 3. Paraphrase the sentences using Participle I as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances (manner).

1. She looked out of the window and enjoyed the beautiful scenery. 2. She refused to go with us to the seaside and stayed alone in the room. 3. The tourists stood at the lake and watched its beauty. 4. The student spoke on the topic and showed all the big cities of Great Britain on the map. 5. They stood at the foot of the Cambrian Mountains and greatly enjoyed them. 6. "Villain!" cried he, as he ran down to him. 7. "May I come in?" she said as she pushed the door a little wider open. 8. "I'm late," she remarked, as she sat down and drew off her gloves. 9. The Lake District forms one of the most popular holiday districts in Great Britain and capitalizes the beauty of its lakes and mountains. 10. I lay in bed and read a very interesting detective story.

Exercise 4. Complete the following sentences using Participle I as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

1. Our friends stood on the shore of the sea 2. Our party walked along the bank of the lake 3. She sat at the window 4. "The North Sea is nowhere more than 60 feet deep," said Bob 5. She walked down the hill 6. He went out quickly 7. He laughed embarrassed 8. He leant on the window-sill 9. He stood here 10. They looked at me

Exercise 5. Translate into English using Participle I as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances (manner).

1. Он вышел, стараясь не беспокоить нас. 2. Она стояла и думала, что ответить. 3. Она спокойно лежала, думая о предстоящей поездке в горы. 4. Он молчал, ожидая, когда все выйдут из комнаты. 5. Том вошел в комнату, неся кофе для Мэри. 6. Она сидела у окна и смотрела на улицу. 7. Они дошли до двери и стояли там разговаривая. 8. Он шел медленно, время от времени останавливался и смотрел на здания. 9. Он ушел, оставив дверь открытой. 10. Я провела весь вечер, перечитывая письма. 11. Они гуляли в саду и любовались цветами. 12. Я стоял, стараясь придумать, что сказать. 13. Он стоял, прислонившись к дереву. 14. Сжав губы, она кивнула в знак согласия. 15. Она еще раз позвонила, затаив дыхание. 16. Джон закрыл глаза, стараясь вспомнить, где он видел эту девушку.

d) adverbial modifier of comparison

As an adverbial modifier of comparison only Participle I Non-Perfect Active is used and it is always preceded by the conjunctions *as if, as though*.

e.g. He peered at me as if not recognizing.

He was silent for a while as though pausing for a reply.

e) adverbial modifier of concession

When Participle I is used in this function the conjunction is not obligatory and then the idea of concession may be understood from the context. However the conjunction *though* will make the semantic relationship clearer.

e.g. He could not catch up with them though working very hard.

f) adverbial modifier of condition

As an adverbial modifier of condition Participle I is recognized by its syntactical surroundings. It is either the subjunctive mood or the future tense

form which allows a participial phrase to function as an adverbial modifier of condition.

e.g. Well, we'll be in Scotland before we know where we are, going at this speed. (если будем двигаться с такой скоростью).

Exercise 1. Point out the participial phrase used as adverbial modifier of comparison, condition and concession.

1. The thick mist gathered in grey curtains and filled the valley. Mr. Ball went carefully down as if being afraid to get lost. 2. She ought to be there and her absence might be resented, but being there she wouldn't know what to say. 3. He said it so as if having various reasons for this refusal. 4. Somebody was waiting: a man, who, though moving irregularly, was making quite a speed in my direction. 5. He studied the map so thoroughly as if trying to remember all the rivers of Great Britain. 6. They stood near the hedge as though enjoying the beauty of its leaves and flowers. 7. Driving at this speed, we'll be there in no time. 8. The tourists looked surprised as if not believing the guide's story. 9. The children kept silent for a while as if hesitating what to say. 10. But why did he marry her, feeling as he did about everything? 11. He studied the way as if trying to show all the large parts of Great Britain. 12. He was greatly excited as if remembering his visit to Stratford-on-Avon. 13. Oh, do go upstairs, Lizzy! You'll only catch a cold, hanging around the passage. 14. She refused to make a trip to the mountains as if not appreciating this kind of holiday. 15. Helen got interested in leaf-bearing trees in the park as though seeing some rare varieties of them.

Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Он изучал карту США так долго, как будто пытался запомнить ее наизусть. 2. Он прошептал что-то, как будто желая привлечь мое внимание. 3. Они обменялись многозначительными взглядами, как будто показывая, что они были вместе. 4. Он сделал сердитый жест кулаком, как будто объясняя, что она была не права. 5. Сюзанна не звонила ему долгое время, как будто показывая, что она в нем не нуждается. 6. Она взглянула на него, как будто желая успокоить. 7. Анна побледнела и что-то прошептала, как будто желая извиниться. 8. Он покачал головой, словно показывая, что не одобряет их поведение. 9. Она замолчала, как будто показывая, что ей больше нечего добавить. 10. Девочка продолжала плакать, словно показывая, что она действительно очень огорчена. 11. Он смог сделать только половину работы, хотя работал всю ночь. 12. Читая с такой скоростью, мы закончим книгу к концу недели.

13. Он не придет на вечеринку, хотя очень этого хочет. 14. Работая в лингафонном кабинете, он сможет добиться замечательного успеха. 15. Она задумчиво посмотрела на меня, словно всерьез воспринимая то, что я сказал. 16. Он двигался очень медленно, как будто плыл.

Exercise 3. Transform the following sentences so as to use adverbial clauses.

Model: Being a great theatre-lover, he attended all the performances. – As he was a great theatre-lover he attended all the performances.

1. When going somewhere by train, I usually try to get out at every station to take a breath of air. 2. Accompanying him down the road, Annie told him as best as she could do about Dick. 3. Dr. Bramwell meeting Andrew in the street, remarked airily: "I have never had a better case." 4. Suddenly she roused herself with a start, fancying she had heard something. 5. Leaving the house of the Morgans Andrew continued on his round with a queer warmth round his heart. 6. Andrew, hurrying home full of triumph of the scientific method, kept everything he had to say to Christine. 7. Liza did not answer, and Mrs. Webster, having nothing more to say, continued her supper in silence. 8. Having made up my mind I told her about my plan. 9. Speaking to her I always try to make my meaning clear. 10. Having seen nothing like that before I was eager to see the performance. 11. He could exercise tact when dealing with the affairs of the others but none when dealing with his own. 12. He raised his head as if listening to something. 13. He generally used that language when talking to children.

Exercise 4. Transform the following sentences so as to use Participle I.

Models: 1. When I go somewhere by plane I always fasten the belt. – (When) going somewhere by plane I always fasten the belt.

2. When I arrived a little late, I found out that everybody had already left. – Having arrived a little late, I found out that everybody had already left.

3. As I am often given difficult tasks I am a well-paid worker. – Being often given difficult tasks I am a well-paid worker.

1. When he got to Euston he paid off the taxi and inquired for the next train to Dover. 2. When I went upstairs, I found him asleep, with all his clothes on. 3. "I knew Tom well," he said, as he leaned back in his chair and lit the cigar, I had offered him. 4. When his first picture was exhibited they came to Amsterdam to see it, his father and his sister and his mother, and his mother cried, when she looked at it. 5. And while she waited for him to come, her pride began revolting. 6. As Andrew pulled on his coat he reflected

miserably that he had not exchanged a word with Christine. 7. After the uncle had once concented to the boy's going out with the Browns, he made no further objections to his association with them. 8. She gave me no answer and looked at me as if she were dreaming about something. 9. As I felt that I was not right I confessed my fault. 10. After he had waited some minutes for an answer he turned round and left the room. 11. Though Alec had many loyal friends, he also had enemies. 12. Since he knew who the man was, Robert was very pleased to have the chance of talking to him. 13. After I had written this exercise, I began to doubt whether it was correct. 14. As he was promised help, he felt quieter.

Exercise 5. Translate into English.

1. Просматривая старые газеты, он обнаружил интересную статью об обычаях и традициях старой Англии. 2. Не зная, что ответить, она покраснела. 3. Когда он был школьником, он играл в футбол. 4. Прочитав книгу, он вернул ее в библиотеку. 5. Выслушав его объяснение, мы поняли, что он прав. 6. Прожив в этом городе 20 лет, он знал здесь каждую улицу. 7. Когда мы были в Лондоне, мы посетили Британский музей. 8. Попрощавшись с друзьями, он уехал в аэропорт. 9. Придя домой, она обнаружила телеграмму. 10. Они не могли попасть в дом, так как оставили ключи на работе. 11. В группе его уважали, так как он был добрым и отзывчивым. 12. Будучи убежденной в своей правоте, она и слушать нас не хотела. 13. Узнав стоимость автомобиля, он решил его не покупать. 14. Я не смогла ее навестить, потому что не знала адреса. 15. Получив телеграмму, моя сестра немедленно выехала домой. 16. Он указал пальцем на женщину, которая стояла у метро. 17. Ожидая трамвая, я увидел старика, который пристально смотрел на меня. 18. Капитан стоял на палубе, давая распоряжения матросам. 19. Гордясь своим отцом, он часто говорит о нем. 20. Терраса была заполнена женщинами, которые пили чай. 21. Не понимая значения слова, я сделал ошибку. 22. Будучи очень усталым, я решил остаться дома и досмотреть ТВ. 23. Не зная, как перевести это предложение, я попросил девушку, сидевшую рядом со мной, помочь мне. 24. Он произнес эти слова улыбувшись. 25. Повернув направо, мы увидели новое здание с огромными окнами. 26. Будучи очень рассеянным, он сделал несколько ошибок, переписывая текст.

The objective participial construction

The objective participial construction consists of a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case and Participle I.

e.g. I saw David playing tennis. – Я видел, как Дэвид играет в теннис.
They heard him singing. – Они слышали, как он поет.

The construction is generally used with Non-Perfect Participle I active, and occasionally it occurs with Participle I Passive:

e.g. I could see the books being taken away.

The objective participial construction is used:

a) with verbs of sense perception.

b) with various verbs of causative meaning or inducement.

c) occasionally with verbs expressing wish.

a)	to see	to notice	to find
	to hear	to observe	to catch
	to feel	to perceive	to discover
	to watch	to smell	to listen to

e.g. We saw (heard, listened to) the train approaching the station.
Did you smell something burning?

b)	to have	to leave
	to get	to start
	to keep	to set

e.g. I won't have you smoking at your age!

They soon got (started) things going.

Note: The verbs *to have*, *to get* may be used in the constructions without their causative meaning, as

e.g. I have some students waiting for me.

I've got my grandson staying for a week.

Sentences with the verbs of this group are usually translated into Russian by simple sentences.

c) to want, to like

e.g. I don't want you talking back to me.

They didn't like me leaving so early.

Exercise 1. Read the following sentences and analyse complex objects with Participle I. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I overheard Dale saying something about it. 2. I thought I saw something moving along the track. 3. He found her watering some plants, her face expressed her surprise at his unusual presence. 4. I opened the door with extreme reluctance and found Morton standing outside. 5. They could hear the Invisible Man breathing. 6. She ran up the drive and I heard her fumbling for the key. 7. Then her charming face grew eager, and glancing round, Young Jolyon saw Bosinney striding across the grass. 8. I heard the guards moving

behind us. 9. I saw him walking briskly through the crowd. 10. It set him thinking. 11. Adeline found her husband standing in the middle of the room waiting for her. 12. I caught her looking at me. 13. They watched him hurrying down the path toward the other men.

Exercise 2. Read and translate the following sentences. Speak on the verbs after which complex objects with Participle I are used.

1. He noticed a girl standing listlessly by a pillar and he slowed his pace. 2. Then she heard the stranger laughing quietly, and his footsteps came across the room. 3. But he found his traps waiting for him in the porter's lodge. 4. At his home, he let himself in, and to his surprise, found his wife coming towards him in the hall. 5. The four soldiers noticed Christian watching them. 6. Mike saw him standing in the doorway. 7. From where she stood she could hear everything going on at once. 8. She found herself waking from sleep and crying, but what she was weeping for she had no idea at all. 9. Their ears spread wide to hear the first noise that would send them rushing into the bush. 10. She could hear Bart moving about outside, whistling as he worked. 11. We may suppose him representing the England of Napoleon's wars, and general unrest. 12. Well, I don't want you coming here and telling me I am untidy. 13. In her ears there rang of a sudden the outrageous and unaccountable laughter that had sent Miss Warren flying from the room.

Exercise 3. Fill in the blanks with one of the verbs from the list below. In some of the sentences more than one verb is correct.

To see, to hear, to feel, to set, to perceive, to watch, to find, to notice, to send, to remember.

1. I ... her going off in that direction about a quarter of an hour ago. 2. Pat turned and ... the door softly closing. 3. It seemed to Young Jolyon, that he could ... her saying: "But, darling, it would ruin you!" 4. Yet he still ... himself struggling towards some solution of the problem. 5. He ... her trying to draw herself away, and smiled. 6. I ... Nurse Howes coming into the ward at one end of the theatre trolley. 7. They ... him going carefully down the long flight of rickety wooden stairs, and then the street door banged shut. 8. Why on earth did you ... Strickland packing? 9. He ... a struggle going within her. 10. He ... the gardeners watering beds of young lettuce. 11. I ... him saying: "What are you looking for, Frank?" 12. She thought she ... him groaning. 13. Jolly was anxious that they should ... him growing, so they set forth to the river. 14. At that very moment they ... somebody moving in the room. 15. That ... my heart thumping.

Exercise 4. Transform the following sentences into complex objects with Participle I.

Model: I could see that Mary was still reading the book. – I could see Mary reading the book.

A. 1. As Nick came up to Toby he turned and saw that Michael was watching them from the other side. 2. He found that the old man was still sitting grim in the darkness. 3. He could see that a man was standing on the pavement. 4. When he opened the window he heard how the birds were singing. 5. In a minute or two I noticed that her eyes were stealthily peeping at me over the top of the book. 6. I could feel that the room was rocking under my feet. 7. I noticed that now his eyes were resting on me with a faint smile of amusement.

Model: A small book was lying open on the bed. (to see) – She saw a small book lying open on the bed.

B. 1. He was watching her so intently. (to see) 2. Martha was protesting that of course they must all come to her flat. (to find) 3. My sister was signalling to me from another table. (to see) 4. The corner of a three-penny detective novel was protruding from Albert's pocket. (to note) 5. The rain drops were pattering against the leaves. (to hear) 6. His father was moving around in the living room. (to hear) 7. He was hurrying through the hot June forenoon, up the hill and on to the open downland. (to imagine) 8. He was standing there, his face expectant. (to see)

Exercise 5. a) Use the participles given below as parts of complex objects: going, dozing, passing, turning, wondering, moving, opening, waiting, setting, looking.

1. He could feel himself ... red. 2. Please start the clock 3. He turned and saw a pair of large dark eyes ... at him through the window of the cab. 4. "I just happened to be in the neighbourhood," she said, "and found myself ... by." 5. As they danced they watched Crisp and Mary's mother ... about the room. 6. He glanced up to see the door 7. I found him ... under a tree. 8. They left me ... outside. 9. The news left me ... what would happen next. 10. They turned to see the sun

b) Complete the sentences using Participle I as part of a complex object.

1. Did anyone see you (to enter) the house? 2. I last saw him (to go towards) the riverbank. 3. Where's my umbrella? I thought I left it (to hang) with my coat. 4. Did you hear voices (to call) for help. 5. When Mary opened her eyes she saw Nina (to stand) by her side. 6. We could feel the sun (to beat)

on our necks. 7. We all sensed danger (to approach). 8. Can you feel something (to burn)? 9. I noticed Tom Wells (to stand) in the shadow of the fountain. 10. She liked to see him (to do things, to dig, to plant). 11. Did you see Mary (to look) into a shop window? 12. He found them (to sit) together and (to talk) peacefully. 13. She felt her voice (to tremble) and tried to control herself. 14. She watched him (to pass) the gate and (to walk) down the street. 15. I saw him (to put) his case right here.

Exercise 5. Translate into English using complex objects with Participle I.

1. Я видел, как они открывали дверь. 2. Том увидел, как в воде что-то быстро движется. 3. Дойдя до середины, я почувствовал, что мост движется. 4. Я наблюдала за тем, как внимательно он читает письмо. 5. Я видеть не могу, когда плохо обращаются с животными. 6. Ты не видел, как они играли в теннис? 7. Я слышал, как Джек приглашал их на пикник. 8. Мы слышали, как водитель извинялся перед пассажирами. 9. Я заметил, как она входила в магазин. 10. Он чувствовал, что кто-то наблюдает за ним. 11. Она открыла окно и наблюдала, как ее дети играли в саду. 12. Стены нашего дома тонкие, и я слышу, как соседка играет на пианино. 13. Он нашел ее на платформе в ожидании поезда. 14. Когда Том увидел, как Джек переходил улицу, он помахал ему рукой. 15. Я видела, как вы проехали мимо нашего дома в своей машине. 16. Он чувствовал, как у него дрожали руки. 17. Мы слышали, как она спускалась по лестнице. 18. Учительница наблюдала, как дети входили в школу. 19. Они спросили, не заметил ли я, чтобы кто-нибудь выходил из дома. 20. Мы наблюдали, как дети играли в футбол. 21. Она нашла Фокса, разговаривающим в саду. 22. Я чувствую, что на кухне что-то горит. 23. Я наблюдала за тем, как мой сын выполняет домашнее задание. 24. Его жена была в душе. Он слышал, как течет вода. 25. Я застал Кэт, когда она ела ранний ланч, перед тем как идти встречать Энн.

The subjective participial construction

The subjective participial construction consists of a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case and Participle I.

The construction is mainly used with the verbs of sense perception (*to see, to hear, to feel, to find, to catch*) and some causative verbs (*to keep, to leave*) in the passive voice.

e.g. Jane was heard playing the piano. – Было слышно (слышали), как Джейн играет на пианино.

I was kept waiting an hour or so. – Меня заставили ждать почти целый час.

Exercise 1. Read the following sentences and analyse complex subjects with Participle I. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. They were heard talking together. 2. At times he was seen driving with her by people who knew him in a social and commercial way. 3. The boots of Albert could be heard racing upstairs. 4. Martha was seen staring at the tree. 5. In a few moments during the launching of the boats, Danvers was seen speaking to a young American girl. 6. He could often be seen walking with his eyes fixed anxiously on little Pablins Dartie's sailing-boat. 7. Here the nurse's voice was heard calling from the top landing. 8. Many students with blood streaming down their faces were seen running down the side streets to avoid arrest. 9. The boys were caught stealing cherries. 10. When I rang the bell a dog could be heard barking in the hall. 11. When the car was heard approaching the people fled anywhere to avoid the police.

Exercise 2. Read and translate the following sentences. Speak on the verbs with which complex subject is used.

1. He suffered from dyspepsia, and he might often be seen sucking a tablet of pepsin. 2. The horse was seen descending the hill. 3. The old Judge was found sitting grin and straight in his chair, waiting. 4. You are found hanging around the grounds of a big house after dark. 5. The visitor was heard walking restlessly backwards and forwards. He was also heard talking to himself. 6. Jennie was seen wearing the gold watch. 7. She may have found the note because she was seen looking through the book. 8. She was found warming herself by the fire. 9. Renny was heard whistling gaily in the room. 10. In the distance a lorry could be seen climbing up a hill.

Exercise 3. Transform the following sentences into sentences with complex subjects.

Model: They overheard two people talking about her. – Two people were overheard talking about her.

A. 1. They saw her sitting poring over her book. 2. We heard the baby crying in her pram. 3. We saw him exchanging glances with that man. 4. They could see a white house gleaming through the reddening autumn leaves. 5. From the distance they could see the host waiting for them on the doorsteps. 6. The teacher found him standing in the middle of the classroom.

Model: He stole curious glances at Mary. (to see) – He was seen stealing curious glances at Mary.

B. 1. Paul consulted his silver watch. (to see) 2. He asked if I was in. (to hear) 3. He telephoned the doctor, stressing the gravity and urgency of the case. (to hear) 4. He paced up and down in his room long after the rest of the family had gone to bed. (to hear) 5. She went in that direction about a quarter of an hour ago. (to see) 6. They argued on the terrace a few minutes ago. (to hear)

The nominative absolute participial construction

The nominative absolute participial construction consists of a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case and Participle I. The nominal element and Participle I are in a predicative relation; the noun or pronoun is not the subject of the sentence. The construction is used as an adverbial modifier:

1) *of attendant circumstances.* e.g. He ran into the room, his eyes shining.

2) *of cause.* e.g. It being now pretty late, we took our candles and went upstairs.

3) *of time.* e.g. This having been settled, Bart left them.

4) *of condition.* In this function the construction occurs but seldom and is almost exclusively used with the participles *permitting* and *failing*. e.g. Weather permitting, we shall start tomorrow.

The prepositional absolute participial construction with Participle I

A prepositional absolute participial construction is introduced by the preposition *with*. Its nominal element is usually a noun in the common case, or a pronoun in the objective case. The construction usually functions as an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

e.g. She stood up with tears running down her face.

The nominative absolute construction

The nominative absolute construction is a construction in which we find no participle. It's used in the function of an adverbial modifier of time or attendant circumstances. In the function of an adverbial modifier of time this construction is rendered in Russian by an adverbial clause.

e.g. Breakfast over, he went to his counting house.

In the function of an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances the construction is rendered either by a coordinate clause (деепричастный оборот) or a noun (pronoun) with the preposition *c*.

e.g. There he stood, his face to the south-east ... his cap in his hand.

The prepositional absolute construction

This construction is mostly used in the function of an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances. In rendering this construction in Russian a coordinate clause or *деепричастный оборот* is used.

e.g. I found him ready, and waiting for me, with his stick in his hand.

Nominative absolute constructions are separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma or a semicolon.

e.g. Then he started out, bag and overcoat in hand, to get his cup of coffee. Mr. Tulkinghorn comes and goes pretty often; there being estate business to do.

Exercise 1. Read and translate the following sentences. State the function of the nominative absolute participial constructions.

1. The next morning, it being Sunday, they all went to church. 2. Fleur having declared that it was “simply too wonderful to stay indoors,” they all went out. 3. They went down the stairs together, Aileen lingering behind a little. 4. She never was a great talker. Often when, the night being fine, we decided to walk back from the music-hall at which we had been spending the evening, she never opened her mouth. 5. He slowly and carefully spread the paper on the desk, with Lowell closely watching. 6. It was quite light. A few miners were already in the street: the first of the night shift moving out. As Andrew walked with them, spent and slow, his footsteps echoing with the others under the morning sky, he kept thinking blindly: “I’ve done something.” 7. Pale-lipped, his heart beating fast, Andrew followed the secretary. 8. She turned, losing her restraint, her eyes sparkling with honest indignation. 9. That police business having been accomplished, he had come to call upon Mr. Poirot. 10. She counted out the money from her bulging purse, her fingers trembling, her eyes snapping at him. 11. It being a hot day, and all of us thirsty, she suggested that we should have a glass of beer. 12. Mrs. Bramwell’s evening began at nine o’clock, the late hour being chosen out of consideration for the medical gentlemen who might be detained at their surgeries. 13. “You know any of them?” I whispered. “Yes,” he said simply, his voice trembling a little. 14. The Strand, it being the hour when the theatres began to empty themselves, was a roaring torrent of humanity and vehicles. 15. All being settled, he went to bed and slept soundly. 16. He glared at Tom with outrage, his eyes glittering with excitement. 17. The waltz in the back room being finished, three couples heading for the bar, caught Daylight’s eyes. 18. He found that Anne had advanced into the hall, her hands folded upon her apron, her eyes contemplating him. 19. This being understood, the

conference was over. 20. As she approached the end of the bundle (of notes) she went slower and slower, her sly black eyes twinkling. 21. She stood listlessly, her head dropping upon her breast. 22. They walked silently through the street, Tom very grave, Liza weeping bitterly.

Exercise 2. Transform the following sentences using appropriate adverbial clauses.

Models: 1. The door to the room being open, Lily heard what they said.
– As the door to the room was open, Lily heard what they said.

2. He ran into the room, his eyes shining. – He ran into the room and his eyes were shining.

3. Dinner being over, he led them into the parlour. – When dinner was over, he led them into the parlour.

1. She blushed, the hot, red colour running up her neck and across her face. 2. Then she saw the stained point, and she drew back, her eyes widening with horror. 3. Preliminary remarks being over, he proceeded to the main point. 4. It was cool and fragrant on the porch; little breezes playing among the roses overhead. 5. Scarcely nodding to us, he went down the walk, his dog running after him. 6. Andrew remained at the gate, his pulse racing suddenly as Christine came down the steps and walked toward him, alone. 7. It was Anny herself who opened the door for Andrew, her face welcoming him with a smile. 8. The hour being early, the bar into which they made their way was free from the crowds which frequented it. 9. He left the office at half past two yesterday afternoon, the manager having no further need for him. 10. She paused, her gaze still questioning him, her tone striving to be off-hand.

Exercise 3. Transform the following sentences so as to use the nominative absolute participial construction.

Model: When the door bell rang Ann rose and left the room. – The door bell ringing Ann rose and left the room.

1. Rip had no desire to work on his farm, for it was to his mind the worst piece of land in the neighbourhood. 2. She listened to me and her tears were rolling down her cheeks. 3. They stood there; the night wind was shaking the drying whispering leaves. 4. She put some order into the drawing room as her housewifely instincts had got the better of her sorrow. 5. When the greetings were over, Old Jolyon seated himself in a wicker chair. 6. The town of Crewe is known to be one of the most busy junctions in England: many railway lines pass through it. 7. When a fortnight of his notice to Mrs. Page had expired Andrew really began to worry. 8. The rain showed no sign of stopping, with

umbrellas and waterproofs they set out. 9. Dinner was served on the terrace, as it was very close in the room. 10. As the river had risen in the night, the crossing was impossible. 11. There was in fact nothing to wait for, and we got down to work. 12. It was dark, as the sun had set an hour before. 13. As the weather was unusually mild at that time for the season of the year, there was no sleighing. 14. When the car stopped the boys jumped out onto the grass. 15. If circumstances permit they will be through with it by May.

Exercise 4. Transform the following sentences so as to use the nominative absolute participial construction.

1. Danny lit a cigarette and his fingers shook so violently he could barely hold the match. 2. As the front door was open, she could see straight through the house. 3. As the complications had ensued, recovery was impossible. 4. As the situation was urgent, we had to go ahead. 5. She said it in a low voice and a spasm of pain crossed her face. 6. When the message was finished Evie brought Julia a cup of tea. 7. We set off; the rain was still coming down heavily. 8. As it was raining cats and dogs, we stayed at home. 9. After she had gone, he got to thinking the matter over. 10. Thoughtful, Andrew finished his omelette; his eyes were all the time fixed upon the microscope. 11. The question was rather difficult to answer at once, and I asked for permission to think it over. 12. He stood leaning against the wall, his arms were folded. 13. There was very little time left; we had to hurry. 14. Of an evening he read aloud; his small son sat by his side. 15. The new engines were safely delivered, all of them were in good order. 16. Bill could not sleep the whole night, as there was something wrong with his eye. 17. As the underground station was not far, we walked there. 18. If time permits, we shall come a few days earlier. 19. If mother permits us, we shall go to the theatre. 20. When the working day was over, she went straight home. 21. As a storm was arising, the ship entered the harbour. 22. As the stop was a long one, the girls got off the train. 23. As the weather was perfect, Lydia played tennis every day. 24. As the last month was a very busy one, she could not answer her friend's letter.

Exercise 5. Translate into English using the nominative absolute participial construction.

1. Так как было очень поздно, собрание было закрыто. 2. Если погода позволит, мы пойдем на каток. 3. Так как все было готово, она решила отдохнуть. 4. Так как было уже поздно, они никуда не пошли. 5. Так как погода была холодная, Джек спрятал руки в карманы. 6. Так как было темно, она поспешила домой. 7. Когда солнце зашло, сразу стало

темно. 8. Так как наш разговор был закончен, я пошел домой. 9. Когда солнце село, туристы развели костер. 10. Так как оставалось еще полчаса до отхода поезда, мы решили поужинать на вокзале. 11. Если погода будет благоприятной, спортсмены могут показать хорошие результаты. 12. Мы долго разговаривали: он задавал мне вопросы, а я охотно на них отвечал. 13. Если условия позволят, я приеду к вам на лето. 14. Так как было очень тепло, дети спали на открытом воздухе. 15. Корабль медленно плыл вдоль берегов Белого моря; сотни птиц кружились над ним.

PARTICIPLE II

Participle II is a non-finite form of the verb which has verbal and adjectival properties. Participle II of transitive verbs is passive in meaning (broken – разбитый, closed – закрытый), participle II of intransitive verbs is active (risen – поднявшийся, gone – ушедший).

The adjectival character of Participle II manifests itself in its syntactical functions. In the sentence Participle II can function as an attribute (a) and a predicative (b).

e.g. (a) An island is a piece of land surrounded by water.

(b) I was disappointed with the book.

When Participle II is used as a predicative, it may be preceded, like an adjective, by adverbs of degree, such as *very, too, extremely, greatly, slightly, so, much, more* as in:

e.g. She was too excited to mind it.

The verbal character of Participle II can be seen in its combinability. It means that participle II of transitive verbs combines with a by-object denoting the doer of the action.

e.g. The results obtained by the research group are promising.

Participles II of prepositional transitive verbs are followed by the appropriate prepositions: *the article referred to*.

Participle II may be modified by an adverbial modifier: *a mansion built twenty years before*.

Exercise 1. Read and translate the following sentences.

1. This speech was received with great applause, mixed with the cries of: "That's the talk!" 2. Mr. Brown, startled, dropped his hat. 3. Rosie looked round with delight at the great dark smoky house, crowded to the ceiling

with the inhabitants of South London. 4. Carried away by the melody, Marie went so far as to dance a step or two herself. 5. "Let's skate again," she said, "shall we? With crossed hands." 6. He seemed calmed and at peace. 7. I took her hands in mine: she held my sprained wrist gently. 8. These two people seem extraordinary interested in Mon Repos. 9. She seemed pleased at Jane's graciousness and complimentary sayings. 10. Surrounded by difficulties and uncertainty, he longed for Christine. 11. Sam looked up relieved. Dear Old Bates was standing in the lighted doorway. 12. I had been seated at the desk a long time, lost in thought. 13. They had gazed sadly on the pitted surface of the once smooth lawn. 14. Strickland was distinguished from most Englishmen by his perfect indifference to comfort. 15. Informed of the arrival of the ship, they sent a car to the port. 16. She showed the travelers into the room reserved for them. 17. The figures mentioned in his article were published in "Izvestia". 18. He didn't usually utter a word unless spoken to. 19. Jenkinson was a retired colonel who lived in Dorset and whose chief occupation was gardening.

Exercise 2. Open the brackets and use the correct form of Participle II.

1. She looked at the table. There was a loaf of brown bread (divide) into two halves. 2. There was another pause (break) by a fit of laughing of one of the old men sitting in the first row. 3. The child (leave) alone in the large room began screaming. 4. The centre of the cotton industry is Manchester (connect) with Liverpool by a canal. 5. The story (tell) by the old captain made the young girl cry. 6. He did not doubt that the information (receive) by morning mail was of great interest for his competitors. 7. The equipment (install) in the shop is rather sophisticated. 8. We've got a great variety of products, which are in great demand. Here are some samples (send) to our distributors last month. 9. The methods (apply) in the building of the new metro stations proved to be efficient. 10. She warmed over the dinner (cook) yesterday. 11. Clothes (buy) in the sale can't be changed. 12. We employ (experience) personnel. We do not care what sex they are. 13. We walked down the hall and down the wide thickly (carpet) stairs. 14. A man in (tear) clothes was making his way towards the boat. 15. (Pollute) water is not safe for drinking. 16. Because we have a (write) agreement, our landlord won't be able to raise our rent for two years. 17. The (expect) event did not occur. 18. The (steal) car was found in the forest. 19. The men ran out of the house, like schoolboys (frighten) of being late. 20. I don't have any furniture of my own. Do you know where I can rent a (furnish) apartment?

Participle II as attribute

As an attribute Participle II can be used in pre-position (e.g. After giving the boy the prescribed medicine I went out for a while.) and in post-position (e.g. The man injured in the accident was taken to hospital.)

When the head-noun of Participle II is the subject of the sentence, the participle can be placed not only immediately after it. Participle II may occupy the initial position in the sentence, it may be placed before the subject.

e.g. Frozen with horror, John understood everything.

Participle II may also be placed at the end of the sentence, after the predicate group.

e.g. Sam watched them, relieved and full of affection.

The subject of the sentence is frequently expressed by a personal pronoun.

Exercise 1. Replace the attributive clauses by phrases with Participle II in the function of an attribute.

Model: They live in a house that was built in 1990. – They live in a house built in 1990.

1. She who was astonished, stared at Peter, then looked the other way.
2. The great majority of examples which are included in this book are typical of spoken English.
3. This book must be returned on the date which is last marked below.
4. The suggestion which was made by the chairman was accepted unanimously.
5. Arthur had brought two wildly excited friends who were called Tom and Nigger to our party.
6. One day she found a letter which was slipped under the door.
7. Joan had enormous black eyes which were framed in velvet lashes and eyebrows.
8. I've got a letter for you which was received 2 days ago.
9. Eliza who was excited by his words moved along the street.
10. They were all pleased with the results which were received by the end of the month.
11. I asked the librarian to show me the magazines which were sent from the United States of America.
12. We were all looking at his smiling face which was framed in the window of the railway-carriage.
13. Tennis is one of the most popular games in England which is played all the year round.
14. They say that in their college, as well as in ours, the students have lots of exams which are held at the end of each term.
15. There lay a loaf of brown bread which was divided into two halves.
16. The child that was left alone in the large room began to scream.
17. He said that the book I had chosen belonged to his grandmother.
18. The machine which has been designed by our colleagues will help scientists greatly.
19. Cars which are

parked in a no-parking zone will be removed. 20. The ideas which are presented in the book are interesting. 21. The photographs which were published in the newspaper were extraordinary. 22. I come from a city that is located in the southern part of the country. 23. The experiment which was conducted at the University of Chicago was successful. 24. The device which is used in our work is up-to-date. 25. The specialists visited the training centre for construction workers which had been set up several years ago.

Exercise 2. Transform the following sentences so as to use subordinate clauses.

Model: I've just bought two books written by Hailey. – I've just bought two books which are written by Hailey.

1. Again there was silence in the wooden shed, broken only by the drumming of the rain upon the tin roof. 2. There were several letters in the pile laid on the table. 3. The Driffields lived in a house painted a dull red. 4. It was a fairly large Victorian mansion kept in good state of repair. 5. Jerry found his way to a table situated in the darkest and most obscure corner. 6. Her eyes, raised mournfully to his, were large and dark with fear. 7. The breakfast was exceptional, even in a house, noted for its table. 8. With a smile he looked across at Christine, seated opposite. 9. These are only a few of the attempts made to improve the situation. 10. The things left behind by passengers are usually taken to the Lost Property Office. 11. There was a dead silence in the room broken only by his cough. 12. The castle, built many years ago, was in good order.

Exercise 3. Translate into English using Participle II.

1. Вещи, оставленные в камере хранения, можно получить в любое время. 2. Проблема, которую он затронул в своем докладе, заслуживает внимания. 3. Ее отец был полковником в отставке. 4. Она пришла в сопровождении двоюродного брата. 5. Назовите слово, заимствованное из французского языка. 6. Язык, на котором говорят в США, называется американским вариантом английского языка. 7. У его дяди был старинный друг по имени Том, который жил в Лондоне. 8. На следующий день мы отправились по адресу, который дал нам доктор. 9. Директор подписал документы, принесенные секретарем. 10. Он не мог забыть грустную историю, рассказанную ему старухой. 11. Вы должны выучить диалог, который записан на пленку. 12. Его взгляд упал на зонтик, оставленный кем-то на крыльце. 13. Я взглянул на ее испуганное лицо и увидел слезы на глазах. 14. Он ответил сквозь закрытую дверь. 15. Они вошли

в большую гостиную, освещенную старинными лампами. 16. Мери села на упавший ствол дерева. 17. Дети играли в разрушенном коттедже. 18. Там было 6 коробок, завернутых в старые газеты. 19. Опавшие листья спокойно лежали в пруду. 20. Сколько времени хранятся вещи, оставленные в камере хранения? 21. Все книги, взятые в библиотеке, должны быть возвращены на следующей неделе. 22. В этой комнате есть несколько сломанных стульев. 23. Эта телеграмма пришла вместе с почтой, доставленной утром. 24. Я надеюсь, что вы не повторите ошибок, сделанных в прошлом диктанте. 25. Книги, издающиеся для детей, обычно очень хорошо иллюстрированы. 26. Он показал мне список товаров, экспортируемых этой фирмой. 27. Застигнутые врасплох, они не знали, что сказать. 28. Оставшись один, я огляделся. 29. Она показала мне письмо, написанное в 1941 году. 30. Я еще не просмотрел всех журналов, присланных нам из Москвы.

Participle II as predicative (part of a compound nominal predicate)

In this function Participle II denotes a state.

e.g. I don't understand these directions. I'm confused.

She looked worried.

The compound nominal predicate consists of a link verb (be, look, get, grow, seem, turn, remain, etc) and a predicative, expressed by Participle II.

e.g. I confessed I was bewildered.

Participle II as adverbial modifier of time

When used as an adverbial modifier of time Participle II is usually preceded by the conjunction *when* or *until*.

e.g. When told the fare, he realized he couldn't afford the tour.

He won't stop arguing until interrupted.

Participle II as adverbial modifier of condition

In this function Participle II is mostly used with the conjunction *if* or *unless*.

e.g. If sent immediately, the telegram will be delivered in time.

John will speak for hours, unless interrupted.

Participle II as adverbial modifier of comparison

Participle II is used with the conjunction *as if* or *as though*.

e.g. He looked bewildered as if told something unbelievable.

The letter was illegible as though written in a hurry.

Participle II as adverbial modifier of concession

Participle II is used with the conjunction *though* or *although*.

e.g. Though frightened, he didn't show it.

Exercise 1. Change the sentences using Participle II. Translate the sentences into Russian.

Model: When they were told how much the trip would cost, they decided to stay at home. – When told how much the trip would cost, they decided to stay at home.

1. Though she was surprised by his arrival, she did not show it. 2. Though he was annoyed by his failure, he continued to work hard. 3. When he was asked for help, he refused. 4. Though he was hurt by her attitude, he didn't show it. 5. When the boy was left to himself, he took the toys and began to play. 6. Her new dress fitted her as though it was made to her measurements. 7. Karel had shown remarkable self-control when he was informed that he had missed Frank by a day. 8. If he is given time, he'll make the first-class chess player. 9. Even when he was defeated, he didn't feel discouraged. 10. Though he was annoyed by his failure, he continued to work hard. 11. If water is distilled, it will become quite tasteless. 12. When she was told the price, she put the shirt back on its place. 13. When he was asked for help, he feigned illness. 14. He looked sleepy as if he was exhausted by his journey. 15. He had sprung to action as if he was frightened. 16. When the modal verb "must" is used with the Perfect Infinitive of the main verb, it has a past time reference. 17. When she was questioned, Irene smiled tolerantly. 18. I can't forget Tom's face. When he was asked about the accident, he began to cry. 19. She suddenly stopped as if she was struck by the news. 20. Though she was impressed by the news, she didn't show it. 21. When it's seen in this light the matter doesn't seem quite so serious. 22. Though this textbook is designed for beginners, it may be used for intermediate students as well.

Exercise 2. Translate into English using Participle II.

1. Когда ей предложили помощь, она поблагодарила и отказалась. 2. Если ему дать возможность, он станет хорошим художником. 3. Когда его спросили о поездке, он сказал, что она была утомительной. 4. Когда ему напомнили о долге, он обещал вернуть его через два дня. 5. Хотя все его уважали, он чувствовал себя чужим среди них. 6. Если его похвалить, он будет стараться работать еще лучше. 7. Костюм сидел на нем так, как будто он был пошит для него. 8. Письмо было неразборчивым, как будто его писали в спешке. 9. Когда ему посоветовали принять

приглашение, он согласился. 10. Когда правило объяснили еще раз, оно показалось совсем легким. 11. Когда Клайду задавали вопросы в суде, он старался быть спокойным, но ему было трудно. 12. Когда Джека привели к шерифу, он понял, что этот человек не пожалеет его. 13. Если этот роман экранизировать, он будет иметь большой успех. 14. Когда его спросили, намерен ли он скоро вернуться домой, он ответил, что будет отсутствовать около двух недель. 15. Так как теплоход был сжат льдом, он не мог продолжать свой путь. 16. Он может быть очень груб, когда он возбужден. 17. Обычно он не говорил ни слова, если к нему обращались. 18. «Он знает об этом?» – спросил Дэн, словно удивившись. 19. Она продолжала смотреть на экран, как замороженная. 20. Когда его спросили, он отказался отвечать на вопрос. 21. Когда его попросили войти, он, казалось, передумал.

The objective participial construction with Participle II

The objective participial construction with Participle II functions as a complex object. The construction consists of a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case and Participle II. The elements of the construction are in a predicative relationship.

e.g. I would like it done right away.

I must have my hair cut.

The objective participial construction with Participle II is used after:

1) the verbs with a causative meaning (*to have, to get, to make*) denoting that something is done or made for the benefit of the person expressed by the subject.

e.g. Max had his car repaired 2 days ago.

Get this prescription made at the chemist's.

In questions and negative sentences the auxiliary verb “do” is used.

e.g. Why don't you have your hair waved?

2) the verbs of sense perception (*to see, to feel, to find, to watch, to observe, to notice*).

e.g. When I returned I found the cottage locked.

I heard these words mentioned several times.

3) the verbs of mental activity (*to consider, to understand*).

e.g. I consider him engaged at the local theatre.

4) the verbs denoting wish (*to want, to wish, to desire, to like, to prefer*).

e.g. I want the letter posted at once.

We prefer the letter answered by the chief.

Exercise 1. Read and translate the following sentences. Speak on the verbs after which complex objects are used.

1. She liked changes and recently she had the drawing-room redecorated. 2. But a week later, feeling himself betrayed, hysterical and in terror, Herbert betrayed his wife. 3. I even heard it suggested that he might get the Foreign Office. 4. As he ate the cottage pie that was his portion he felt Blodwen's eye fastened on him. 5. We'll have supper sent up to the suite. 6. About ten minutes later he heard the front door shut. 7. Perhaps she refused to have him sent for because she knew he would refuse to come. 8. Then I want to have my fortune told. 9. I'll take you to have your hair cut now. 10. He looked up and saw the stars sprinkled above the plane-trees of the square. 11. I should very much like it made clear to me. 12. I do not intend to have my professional reputation compromised. 13. Have you ever visited Scotland and seen the mountains there covered with snow. 14. Have you ever heard his name mentioned before? 15. The manager wishes the cases counted and weighed. 16. The police found the money hidden in a disused garage. 17. "I want it proved," he roared. 18. He heard his name called, turned round, but didn't see anyone.

Exercise 2. Change the following sentences into negative and interrogative. Remember that you must use the auxiliary verb do.

1. I have your taxi kept at the door. 2. She had her hair cut very short, Eton cropped. 3. She had the slips printed. 4. He had his eyes fixed on the picture. 5. He had it all planned before. 6. We had the letter sent there immediately. 7. We had all the films developed yesterday. 8. He had his bag brought downstairs an hour ago. 9. Jane had her chest X-rayed 3 days ago. 10. My friend had his job lost 6 months ago. 11. For their New Year's Eve party she had all the furniture moved out of the sitting room. 12. I had the suit made yesterday.

Exercise 3. Use the participles given below as parts of complex objects:
shampooed, cut off, removed, sung, finished, known, saved, changed, translated, seen, covered, deserted, mended, repaired, locked, called, white-washed, made.

1. They found the door ... 2. King Charles I had his head ... 3. Have you ever seen the mountains ... with snow? 4. We want the work ... by Saturday. 5. Please have these letters ... into English. 6. He thought it necessary to have the ceiling of the room ... 7. We found the house ... 8. I'd like my hair ... 9. Have you ever heard this opera ... in Italian? 10. He heard his name ... from behind. 11. I've recently had my appendix ... 12. Have you got your

watch ...? 13. They have scarcely any money ... for their old age. 14. You should make your views 15. I'll get the matter ... to. 16. I'd like my shoes 17. Can we have the programme 18. I'm having a new dress

Exercise 4. Transform the following sentences so as to use subordinate clauses instead of complexes with Participle II.

Model: He liked to hear his children praised. – He liked to hear when his children were praised.

1. I heard these topics argued between the scientists for years. 2. Although Harold knew the facts so well he felt himself carried away by the rising current of excitement in the air. 3. With satisfaction Simon saw his friend's face relaxed. 4. He felt himself compelled to bring this action. 5. She has found me unaltered; but I have found her changed. 6. About an hour had passed when he heard the key softly turned, and the door opened. 7. Arrived at the edge of the pond he stood, noting another water-lily opened since yesterday. 8. Hester, suppose you were to find yourself discharged from the faculty? 9. Hope felt the bag drawn away from her. 10. I saw Kate addressed by a stranger. 11. Despite himself, Maurice felt his attention caught. 12. Do you always like to hear your name spoken in public? 13. I consider Mike badly organized. He's failed in all the exams. 14. When I came to my friend's I found the door locked.

Exercise 5. Transform the following sentences so as to use complex objects with Participle II.

Model: When I called on her in the morning I found that she had gone. – When I called on her in the morning I found her gone.

1. When he went back he found that his wife was already dressed. 2. On entering his room I found that he was absorbed in a detective novel. 3. He felt that his cheeks were flushed by the fever. 4. He found that Leila was calm and delighted. 5. I want someone to type this letter. 6. His thoughts wandered and he found that his mind was filled with memories of the past. 7. I heard that his name had been mentioned several times during the conversation. 8. I saw that Mrs. Brown's advertisement was printed in the local newspaper. 9. When Mary returned home she found that a telephone had been installed in their flat. 10. I tried the handle, and found that the door was unlocked. 11. They found that the treasure was hidden in a cellar. 12. Yesterday I saw a car that was painted in many colours. 13. He wants someone to do the work immediately. 14. We considered that the problem was solved. 15. I found that the room was furnished with a Spartan simplicity.

Exercise 6. Translate into English using Participle II.

1. Она слышала, как назвали ее фамилию. 2. Я хочу, чтобы работа была закончена в воскресенье. 3. Я сейчас шью новое платье. 4. В среду ей покрасили и подстригли волосы. 5. Ей удалили два зуба. 6. Я хочу, чтобы мои указания точно выполнялись. 7. Ему следует подстричься. 8. Точно ясно, что он очень хотел, чтобы нарисовали его портрет. 9. Вам надо проверить зрение. 10. Я хочу починить часы. 11. Я хочу побелить потолок и оклеить стены обоями. 12. Они обнаружили, что дверь закрыта на ключ. 13. Где вам шили этот костюм? 14. Мне покрасили дверь только на прошлой неделе. Вам нравится цвет? 15. Она нашла, что я ничуть не изменился, но я нашел, что она изменилась. 16. Я слышал, как это было сказано несколько раз. 17. Мы наблюдали, как ремонтировали машину. 18. Я видел, как мешки погрузили. 19. Они обнаружили, что дом заброшен. 20. Она сказала, что хочет, чтобы эти документы напечатали как можно скорее. 21. Когда вы, наконец, настроите свой рояль? 22. Нам отремонтировали дом до того, как мы уехали на юг. 23. Когда вам построили гараж? 24. Ты мог бы добиться, чтобы его уволили. 25. Они хотели, чтобы комитет созвали в понедельник.

The nominative absolute participial construction with Participle II

The nominative absolute participial construction with Participle II consists of the nominal element (a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case) and Participle II.

e.g. The signal given, the train started.

The construction can be used as:

1) *an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances;*

e.g. She was smoking now, her eyes narrowed thoughtfully.

2) *an adverbial modifier of time;*

e.g. The work finished, we went home.

3) *an adverbial modifier of manner;*

e.g. We sat silent, his eyes fixed on mine.

4) *an adverbial modifier of reason;*

e.g. We began to talk, but my attention distracted by my surroundings,

I took small notice of him.

5) *an adverbial modifier of condition;*

e.g. He was a gentleman, but he was passionate, the cup once sipped, would he consent to put it down?

The prepositional absolute construction with Participle II

The prepositional absolute construction with Participle II differs from the discussed above in that it is introduced by the preposition *with* and its nominal element is hardly ever expressed by a pronoun; it's more closely related to the predicate verb and is seldom set off by a comma.

e.g. She sat munching her meal with her eyes glued to the American soap-opera on the screen.

The construction usually functions as an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances or manner. Absolute constructions with Participle II are infrequent and are mainly used in literary style.

Revision

Exercise 1. Read the following sentences, state the forms and functions of participles. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. Clumsily, feeling more awkward than she had felt since she was a young girl, Lucy picked up her bag and her gloves and leaving Tony standing in the middle of the room, looking tired and coldly amused, she followed Dora into the hallway. 2. He stopped, when he saw Lucy, and looked, puzzled, politely, not recognizing her for a moment, from her to Dora. 3. "What's the matter with you?" she asked, smiling, but irritated. 4. For a moment, he stood in silence, seeming to be studying his son, puzzled, intense, loving as though searching for some minute, hidden secret in the soft pleased welcoming child's face. 5. She sat there for almost an hour, her eyes fixed upon the points of light on the other shore. 6. She looked up, smiling. She was beginning to feel happy about his being there. 7. He was worried about Edith, living in that cottage of hers all alone. 8. The sun had set, and it was twilight, the sky was growing dark, bringing to view the twinkling stars. 9. The amazing thing about the whole situation was that they were able to live for a long time without water. 10. The town deserted since the battles, stood black and half-ruined. 11. Having signed the will I left the office. 12. Fees paid in advance are not refundable. 13. Sitting in a front row we had an excellent view. 14. I noticed him coming along the road. 15. Students starting on Monday should arrive by 8.30. 16. Ray, depressed after his unfortunate road accident, decided to go on a holiday. 17. Not having studied, I failed the exam. 18. Jane ate her dinner sitting in front of the television. 19. I watched boats sailing by. 20. The football player, turning awkwardly, sprained his ankle. 21. I don't like to see singing birds in cages. 22. Being my friend he helped me a lot. 23. Finding him a bore I kept out of his way. 24. He locked the cupboard quickly, as if trying to hide something from us. 25. We were delayed by heavy

tracks loaded into the ship. 25. Having been invited to speak to you I must say a few words. 26. Covered with confusion, they apologized abjectly. 27. When questioned, he denied being a member of the group. 28. Considered works of art, they were admitted into the country without customs duties. 29. I can see several people standing. 30. Changed into a smart suit, she looked gorgeous. 31. They were well-behaved and well-spoken children. 32. When writing a business letter begin with "Dear Sir". 33. He moved his lips as if trying to speak. 34. I was asked if I had noticed anyone leaving the building. 35. We all suddenly sensed danger approaching. 36. You should have your eyes tested. 37. Having run into serious difficulties, I count on your support and understanding. 38. Gracie loved her parents and couldn't bear to see them so disappointed. 39. My eyes hurting, I put the book aside.

Exercise 2. Choose the right form of the participle.

1. The girl (writing, written) on the blackboard is our best pupil. Everything (writing, written) here is quite right. 2. The house (surrounding, surrounded) by tall trees is very beautiful. The wall (surrounding, surrounded) the house was very high. 3. Who is that boy (doing, done) his homework at that table? The exercises (doing, done) by the pupils were easy. 4. The girl (washing, washed) the floor is my sister. The floor (washing, washed) by Helen looked very clean. 5. We listen to the girls (singing, sung) Russian folk songs. We listened to the Russian folk songs (singing, sung) by the girls. 6. Do you know the girl (playing, played) in the garden? 7. The book (writing, written) by this scientist is very interesting. 8. Translate the words (writing, written) on the blackboard. 9. We could not see the sun (covering, covered) by dark clouds. 10. The (losing, lost) book was found at last. 11. (Going, gone) along the street, I met Mary and Ann. 12. Read the (translating, translated) sentences once more. 13. Name some places (visiting, visited) by you last year. 14. I picked up the pencil (lying, lain) on the floor. 15. She was reading the book (buying, bought) the day before. 16. Yesterday we were at a conference (organizing, organized) by the pupils of the 10th form. 17. (Taking, taken) the girl by the hand, she led her across the street. 18. It was not easy to find the (losing, lost) stamp. 19. I shall show you a picture (painting, painted) by Hogarth. 20. Here is the letter (receiving, received) by me yesterday. 21. Look at the beautiful flowers (gathering, gathered) by the children. 22. His hat (blowing, blown) off by the wind was lying in the middle of the street. 23. "How do you like the film?" he asked, (turning, turned) towards me. 24. When we came nearer, we saw two boys (coming, come) towards us. 25. I think that the boy (standing, stood) there is his brother.

Exercise 3. Open the brackets and fill in with the proper participle.

1. He fell asleep (exhaust) by the journey. 2. She entered the dining room (accompany) by her husband and her father. 3. A snake (sleep) in the grass will bite if anyone treads upon it. 4. (Fill) his pockets with apples the boy was about to run away when he saw the owner of the garden with a stick in his hand. 5. It was a bright Sunday morning of early summer (promise) heat. 6. When I came home, I found the table (lay). 7. (Judge) by the colour of the sun it should be windy tomorrow. 8. (Arrive) at a big seaport, I started to look for a job. 9. He had received an urgent message (ask) him to telephone Sir Matthew. 10. He looked at groups of young girls (walk) arm in arm. 11. In the wood they sat down on a (fall) tree. 12. (See) from the hill the city looks magnificent. 13. (Not know) where to go he turned to a passer by. 14. (Lock) in her room she threw a fit. 15. (Address) the parcel, I went out at once to post it. 16. She often took care of my little sister (give) me a possibility to play with other boys. 17. (Wash) her face in cold water, she came up to the window and shut it. 18. Paul sat down again, evidently (change) his mind about going. 19. She cut her foot on a piece of (break) glass, half (hide) in the sand. 20. (annoy) by the constant interruptions, the Minister refused to continue, (demand) that the trouble-makers leave. 21. She averted her eyes each time she found herself (stare) at. 22. The man behaved as if (hide) something tragic. 23. Miss Honey couldn't help admiring this (astonish) child. 24. He had a good practical knowledge of the language, (work) as an interpreter for many years. 25. He always keeps a diary while (travel). 26. (Support) by her elbow, Mary listened to their talk. 27. I've never seen a man (rain) through having extravagant habits. 28. (explain) everything, I want to tell you how sorry I am. 29. Not (know) a word of Dutch, she was taken to the police station. 30. There was a long line of (abandon) trucks and carts on the road (lead) up the bridge. 31. (lie) in bed, (worry) and (depress), Sarah started to think once again about the problem. 32. Students (will) to take the exam should give their names to the Principal by Friday.

Exercise 4. Find and correct the mistakes if any.

1. On the walls there were some common coloured pictures, framing and glazed. 2. Felt tired and having nothing more to do till he came, she sat into the armchair at the window having looked at the mountains lighting by the sun. 3. Stunning by the blow, Peter fell heavily. 4. Believing that he is alone, the villain expresses his thoughts aloud. 5. Tom, horrifying at what he had done, could at first say nothing. 6. Having known that he wouldn't be able to buy food on his journey he took large supplies with him. 7. If she catches

you having read her diary, she will be beside herself with anger. 8. It was the hour of sunset, having unnoticed in the cities, so beautiful in the country. 9. While reading a book, I came across several interesting expressions. 10. Having feared that the police would recognize him he never went out in daylight. 11. Jones and Smith came in, following by their wives. 12. Mr. Johnson, I have sent for you to tell you of a serious complaint sending in to me from the court. 13. I heard him having come up the stairs slowly, as if he were carrying something heavy. 14. The stone thrown by the boy reached the opposite bank. 15. Finished breakfast, he stayed for some minutes in the dining room. 16. His house was close at hand, a very pleasant little cottage, painted white, with green blinds. 17. She looked at the scene having shaken to the innermost of her heart. 18. Waited in the reception room he thought over what he would say when he was asked into the office. 19. She stayed locking in her room, refusing to come downstairs. 20. Having discussed the plan we started carrying it out. 21. I found her listened to him having tried to catch every word. 22. Mrs. Green doesn't explain things well. The students are confusing. 23. Ray, having depressed after his unfortunate road accident, decided to go for a holiday. 24. Deciding on this course of action some time ago, I was unable to stay at home.

Exercise 5. Translate into English using the proper participle.

1. Артистка, рассказывающая детям сказки по радио, знаменита на всю страну. 2. Сказка, рассказанная няней, произвела на ребенка большое впечатление. 3. Рассказав ребенку сказку, она пожелала ему спокойной ночи. 4. Моя бабушка, рассказавшая мне сказку, живет в маленьком домике на берегу озера. 5. Ребенок всегда с интересом слушает сказки, рассказываемые няней. 6. Рассказывая детям сказки, она говорит разными голосами, имитируя героев сказок. 7. Играя в саду, дети не заметили, что стало темно. 8. Подойдя к двери, он открыл ее. 9. Том подошел к смеющейся девочке. 10. Он положил на стол смятое письмо. 11. Плачущая девочка была голодна. 12. Бабушка смотрела на детей, играющих во дворе. 13. Она любит смотреть на играющих детей. 14. Сделав уроки, дети пошли гулять. 15. Лежа на диване, он читал книгу. 16. Принеся свои игрушки в комнату, ребенок начал играть. 17. Прочитав много книг Диккенса, он хорошо знал этого писателя. 18. Мальчик, бегущий мимо дома, вдруг остановился. 19. Будучи очень занят, он не сразу услышал меня. 20. Услышав шаги, он поднял голову. 21. Выпив чашку чая, она почувствовала себя лучше. 22. Прибыв до открытия конференции, они успели осмотреть город. 23. Не чувствуя себя виноватым, он отказался

извиниться. 24. И вечером после чая они сидели в гостиной, дамы вязали, а доктор Мэкфайл курил свою трубку. 25. Через секунду Льюис выскочил из машины, его глаза горели от возбуждения. 26. Она могла чувствовать, как у нее сильно болят колени. 27. Костюм великолепен, но мне хотелось бы укоротить юбку. 28. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы контракт подписали сегодня. 29. Написав на конверте адрес, она выбросила открытку в корзину для бумаг. 30. Так как он никогда раньше не занимал денег, он нашел целый ряд людей, которые были готовы одолжить ему небольшие суммы. 31. Джим надел шляпу и вышел, хлопнув дверью. 32. Я быстро взглянул на Марти и Джерри, сидящих в первом ряду, и увидел, что они улыбаются.

Exercise 6. Point out the objective participial construction.

1. Suddenly I felt a soft hand touching my face. 2. It was getting dark, and soon I heard the Morlocks approaching me. 3. Meanwhile she had the satisfaction of seeing him appointed Recorder of a Welsh town. 4. I never saw him giving anybody a haircut or a share, although I suppose one or two people went into his shop by mistake. 5. I could see black hair on the floor and feel my head becoming colder and colder with exposure. 6. He heard the telephone buzzing at the other end, and then the click of a lifted receiver and a man's voice, a sleepy voice, saying: "Hullo. Yes." 7. Paul felt life changing around him. 8. She heard him running quickly indoors. 9. Clara heard him laughing, in a way she hated, with the girls down the next room. 10. Certainly she never saw herself living happily through a lifetime with him. 11. He could hardly arrest Watson, but when he saw a man actually climbing out of the pantry window there came a limit to his restraint. 12. She could feel him losing himself. 13. He heard the clock ticking audibly and half suspected that he had been dozing. 14. She listened to the wind blowing and the rain falling.

Exercise 7. Comment on the form and function of the nominative absolute construction and the construction introduced by *with*.

1. "Walter", she whispered, her lips trembling. 2. She leaned against him, her knees shaking, and he was afraid she would faint. 3. Loren walked slowly back to the house, his heart pounding at his awful discovery. 4. Owen brooded for a week, a scheme simmering in his mind. 5. Mr. Spiller looked at the fountain, with its tall water wavering and bending in the wind. 6. The two often went long walks together, Arthur taking her arm in the soldier's fashion, rather stiffly. 7. She sat on the green bench feeling a little faint and giddy, her heart pounding. 8. Our Spanish not being very good, it took me a few minutes

to understand, but at last I got it. 9. One day in March he lay on the bank of Nethermere, with Miriam sitting beside him. 10. He lay still, with tiny bits of snow tickling his face. 11. She was a rich woman, her estate being proved at a hundred thousand pounds. 12. He looked round jerkily, his eyes darting here and there as if for an escape. 13. It was still several hours to cockcrow and the mist hung thickly over Loxley lake as the battle horses floated silently across it, with their riders standing guard beside them. 14. His wife, her face hard set, held out the telegram to him. 15. He got up, his eyes still flashing between Gatsby and his wife. 16. He was walking ahead of me along Fifth Avenue in his alert, aggressive way, his hands out a little from his body as if to fight off interference, his head moving sharply here and there, adapting itself to his restless eyes. 17. On the last night, with my trunk packed and my car sold to the grocer, I went over and looked at that huge incoherent failure of a house once more. 18. He stumbled towards the deep muddy pit like a man newly struck blind, his hands searching for the small, quiet creature who was all his strength. 19. He could see Irene at the piano, with lamplight falling on her powdery hair.

Exercise 8. Comment on the function of the participle.

1. They stood facing the windows that led out on the verandah. 2. She stood up and turning to him stretched out her arms: he took her in his and kissed her on the lips. 3. Two or three of her admirers proposed again, but they were still penniless; one or two boys younger than herself proposed; a retired Indian Civilian, a K.C.I.E., did the same: he was fifty-three. 4. Suddenly he turned to her, interrupting her in the middle of a sentence, so that she could not but see that he had not been listening, and his face was chalk white. 5. It wouldn't be very nice to be a bridesmaid at Doris's wedding. She would be glad to escape that. And then Doris as a married woman and herself single! 6. The women all looked rather frightened. 7. He waited, holding his breath, but it was all right: she was going out of the back door. 8. He felt inspired, too, to set the trap now and leave it. 9. Mr. Spiller, opening his own front door in an agreeable dream, encountered Masters. 10. He stared around him as if expecting to see the person who had shrieked. 11. She sat on the green bench feeling a little faint and giddy, her heart pounding. 12. The driver was looking right and left as if trying to find a particular address; he turned the car around at the corner and came back. 13. Hearing footsteps, she rose and went to the door. 14. He seemed puzzled and rather fretted. 15. Having quarreled with his sister, he had gone into cheap lodgings. 16. Then he put on his hat and went, saying nothing. 17. Presently the lad stood in front of her, wildly

excited. 18. Knowing that the end was so near, she became rather solicitous. 19. He was feeling humiliated. 20. People gazed at the broken windows of the car and at Hurstwood in his plain clothes. 21. Wincing with the pain of his wound he carried the lad outside. 22. He ran on deeper and deeper into the forest he knew so well, searching for the boy, hoping he found him before the foresters, or worse still, Guy of Gisburne and his men. 23. The young Steward could easily have overtaken the fugitives but he preferred to let them run until they were exhausted. 24. I have noticed that when someone asks for you on the telephone and, finding you out, leaves a message begging you to call him up the moment you come in, as it's important, the matter is more often important to him than to you. 25. They were in a difficulty, but here they noticed a young man sleeping at the foot of the cross. 26. A table covered with red cloth stood on this platform 27. When I came back to the cave, I saw that Bill was standing with his back to the wall, breathing hard. 28. Hearing a faint shriek from the hut, he turned. 29. After the war Gatsby made his fortune selling grain alcohol over the country.

THE GERUND

The Gerund is a non-finite form of the verb which names a process or an action. It is formed by adding the suffix *-ing* to the stem of the verb.

Like all the other verbals the gerund has a double nature, that is, it has *verbal* and *nominal* properties, it combines the features of the verb with those of the noun.

The nominal character of the gerund manifests itself in 1) its syntactical functions and 2) partly in its combinability.

I. In the sentence the gerund can function in the same way as the noun, so it may function as

1) *a subject*

e.g. Riding a bicycle is my favourite pastime.

2) *a predicative*

e.g. His hobby is collecting stamps.

3) *an object*

e.g. Avoid using very long sentences.

II. a) Like a noun the gerund may combine with a preposition when used in the function of 1) an attribute or 2) an adverbial modifier or 3) a prepositional object.

1. There's a chance of seeing him again. (attribute)

2. She dressed without making a sound. (adverbial modifier)

3. He was accused of taking the money. (object)

II. b) Like a noun the gerund can combine with 1) a noun in the genitive case or 2) a possessive pronoun when they denote the doer of the action expressed by the gerund.

1. Do you mind Ann's going with us?

2. We were surprised at your leaving the party.

II. c) Like a noun it may combine with the negative pronoun *no*.

e.g. There is no avoiding him now.

The verbal character of the gerund manifests itself in 1) its syntactical and 2) its morphological features.

The syntactical features of the gerund

Like a finite verb the gerund may be modified by an adverbial modifier.

e.g. We enjoyed walking slowly.

Like a finite verb the gerund of a transitive verb can take a direct object.

e.g. They can't get good crops without cultivating soil.

The morphological categories of the gerund

They also manifest the verbal character of the gerund. They are 1) the category of voice for transitive verbs and 2) the category of perfect. Thus there are four forms of the gerund for transitive verbs and two forms for intransitive verbs.

The Gerund	Active	Passive
Non-perfect	running seeing	– being seen
Perfect	having run having seen	– having been seen

The gerund of transitive verbs possesses voice distinctions. Like other verb forms, the active gerund points out that the action is directed from the subject, whereas the passive gerund indicates that the action is directed towards the subject.

e.g. I hate interrupting people.

I hate being interrupted.

The perfect passive gerund is very rarely used.

There are some verbs (*to need, to want, to require to deserve*) and the adjective *worth* which are followed by an active gerund with passive meaning.

e.g. My watch needs repairing.

The film is amusing. It's worth seeing.

The sportsman deserves praising.

The category of perfect finds its expression in the contrast of non-perfect and perfect forms.

The non-perfect gerund denotes an action simultaneous with that expressed by the finite verb.

e.g. He is surprised

He was surprised at seeing you.

He will be surprised

The perfect gerund denotes an action prior to the action denoted by the finite verb.

e.g. I regret

I regretted having uttered these words.

I will always regret

The perfect gerund always indicates priority, while the meaning of the non-perfect gerund may vary and depends to a great extent on the context, that is:

1) on the lexical meaning of the finite verb it refers to, and

2) on the preposition it combines with.

Thus the *non-perfect gerund* may denote *priority*

a) when used after the verbs *to apologize, to excuse, to forget, to forgive, to punish, to remember, to reproach, to thank*.

e.g. I hardly remember ever seeing a better game.

He reproached me for not visiting them.

b) after the prepositions *on (upon), after, without*.

e.g. After reading the poem twice she could recite it.

On entering the hall he saw a lot of familiar faces.

In all the above cases the priority is not stressed. It is of no importance to emphasize it. But if the priority is emphasized, *the perfect gerund* is used.

e.g. I don't remember having ever seen you before.

He came back after having been away for ten years.

The non-perfect gerund can also denote an action referring to the future:

a) after some verbs: *to hope, to insist, to intend, to look forward, to object, to plan, to suggest, to think*.

e.g. I don't object to your going on a trip to Europe.

b) after the nouns (*intention, plan, hope*)

e.g. There's no hope of getting the book.

c) after the adjective *keen* (*keen* – сильно желающий чего-либо, стремящийся к чему-либо)

e.g. My mother is keen on my marrying a good man.

d) after the preposition *before*.

e.g. We met once more before parting.

Exercise 1. Use the appropriate form of the gerund of the verbs in brackets.

1. I prefer (drive) to (drive). 2. Stop (argue) and start (work). 3. He liked neither (read) nor (read) aloud to. 4. Why do you avoid (see) me? 5. He tried to avoid (see). 6. I suggest (hold) another meeting next week. 7. On (read) her letter he had once more a feeling of disappointment. 8. After (read) this article you will give up (smoke). 9. I hate (borrow) money. 10. I don't feel like (work); what about (go) to a disco instead? 11. He insists on (send) there instead of me. 12. We insist on (send) him there at once. 13. She likes (interrupt) her mother but she hates (interrupt). 14. He is used to (treat) his parents with respect and they like (treat) in that way. 15. Which is better? (leave) a large legacy to someone or (leave) without any? 16. He hates (remind) people of their duties or (remind) of his. 17. The equipment must go through a number of tests before (install). 18. Ralph likes (talk) down to his pals but he is against (talk) to in that way. 19. The set of short stories is worth (read).

20. He liked to do things without (disturb) anyone or (disturb). 21. The boy was afraid of (punish) and hid himself. 22. I really regret (hurt) you. 23. The floor wants (polish). 24. The top-student deserved (get) the prize. 25. She dreams of (invite) to the party. 26. He stopped for a moment and then went on (speak). 27. She showed no sign of (impress). 28. The project required (improve). 29. Tracy opened the door without (knock) at it. 30. She finds the film worth (see). 31. I remember (take) to London when I was a very small child. 32. She denied (see) me at the concert though I'm sure I saw her in the stalls. 33. There is very little hope of the work (do) in time. 34. I strongly suspect Gerald of (know) all about it beforehand, though he swears he didn't. 35. I sat on the doorstep thinking over my chances of (escape) from home. 36. (watch) a cowboy film is a pleasure for any boy. 37. On (take) to hospital, she was examined by the surgeon. 38. It's no use (argue) about tastes. 39. You can improve the taste of meat by (pepper) it. 40. I want to thank her for (look) after the children while I was out. 41. The jeans want (shorten).

The use of the gerund

In the sentence the gerund can perform any syntactical function typical of a noun. When used like a noun it may function

a) alone (a single gerund)

e.g. I like dancing.

But the single gerund occurs very seldom.

b) as a headword of a gerundial phrase

e.g. I like playing the piano.

c) as part of a gerundial construction.

e.g. I like Ann's playing the piano.

A *gerundial construction* is a syntactical unit consisting of a nominal element (a noun or a pronoun) and a verbal element (a gerund). The gerund is in predicate relation to the noun or pronoun, that is in the construction the gerund denotes an action performed by the person or non-person expressed by the nominal element. Thus the relations between the elements of the construction resemble those between the subject and the predicate of the sentence, that's why the gerundial construction is used when the doer of the action of the gerund doesn't coincide with the subject of the sentence.

The nominal element of the construction can be expressed by

a) a noun in the genitive case or a possessive pronoun denoting a living being.

e.g. We are looking forward to Peter's coming back.

They insisted on my staying with them.

b) a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case. There is a growing tendency, especially in informal speech, to use a noun in the common case and a pronoun in the objective case to denote the doer of the action expressed by the gerund.

e.g. She doesn't approve of her son (him) staying out late at night.

Note: The genitive case of the noun is impossible

1) when the nominal element consists of two or more nouns;

e.g. We insist on the rich and poor being treated alike.

2) if the noun has a post-modifying attribute.

e.g. I can't think of a man of talent composing such music.

c) a noun in the common case or a possessive pronoun if the nominal element denotes a lifeless thing.

e.g. The carrying out of these plans depends on the documents being signed in time.

He insisted on its being delivered without delay.

d) a pronoun which has no category of case (all, this, that, both, each, something)

e.g. I couldn't deny both of them having made a reasonable excuse.

She was responsible for this being done properly.

Exercise 1. Read the following replacing the pronouns in the objective case or nouns in the common case by possessives and genitives.

Model: I'm afraid of Kate losing the way. – I'm afraid of Kate's losing the way.

1. He insists on his mother being taken to hospital. 2. Do you mind me opening the window? 3. Fancy him not wanting to leave prison. 4. I can't excuse Sue not answering our invitation. 5. Did your husband agree to you coming to see me? 6. I can't bear him being treated like that. 7. Please forgive me asking such a personal question. 8. I object to Peter making private calls on his phone. 9. He resented his friend being promoted before him. 10. You can't prevent her spending her own money. 11. I just can't understand them inviting everybody to see the film again. 12. Our teacher won't like us coming late to the lecture. 13. I don't remember David complaining about it. 14. I don't like the idea of Betty going home alone.

Exercise 2. Read the following replacing the possessives and genitives by pronouns in the objective case and nouns in the common case.

Model: I don't mind your borrowing my car. – I don't mind you borrowing my car.

1. They can't prevent his becoming an actor. 2. The weather won't stop their playing in the match. 3. He disliked my working late. 4. I didn't mind Ann's leaving home. 5. How do you feel about their getting married? 6. You must pardon his not answering your letter. 7. I was afraid of Mary's leaving without me. 8. Fancy her keeping a snake as a pet. 9. I'll never forget my brother's jumping over the fence. 10. I remember your coming in long after midnight. 11. Do you agree to our taking her up to town and putting her under the best control? 12. I can't bear the thought of the children's staying there alone. 13. My wife hates my reading a newspaper at breakfast. 14. He enjoyed her playing his music.

Exercise 3. Complete the following sentences using a gerundial construction.

1. Do you think she'll approve of (you, to tell) me this. 2. Uncle Julius insists on (I, to come) to keep him company. 3. I remember (he, to ask for) that book last Monday. 4. He doesn't mind (his daughter, to go) to the cinema once a week. 5. It is difficult to stop (George, to talk) once he begins. 6. This change of the timetable will mean (we, to leave) much later every day. 7. I imagine (he, to lose) all his savings. 8. I remember in school days he couldn't answer the teacher's questions without (I, to prompt) him. 9. I can't understand (they, to forget) to phone us. 10. I was surprised at (Sue, to forget) to come to the meeting. 11. Would you mind (she, to join) us? 12. I'll have to insist on (he, not to disturb) us during the lesson. 13. It won't be any use (you, to try) to borrow any more money. 14. Excuse (I, to keep) you waiting. 15. We are excited about (Marry, to win) a scholarship. 16. I couldn't understand (they, not to want) to go. 17. The neighbours are displeased at (she, to invite) her friends every day. 18. It won't do any good (you, to get) all worked up.

Exercise 4. Make one sentence out of two by using a gerundial construction.

Model: He will be sent abroad. The boss insists on it. – The boss insists on his being sent abroad.

1. We talked about him behind his back. The boy resented that fact. 2. Ann borrowed Sally's clothes without asking her first. Sally complained about that fact. 3. They ran away to get married. That fact shocked everyone. 4. The programmer is always on time with his work. You may rely on him. 5. Helen is here to answer our questions about the company's new insurance plan. We should take advantage of that fact. 6. Students must write their corrections carefully. The teacher insists on it. 7. Did you give me back the

book I lent you? I can't remember it. 8. I'm really surprised. The concert was over so early. 9. You took the time to help us. We greatly appreciate that fact. 10. You don't want to do it. I don't understand that fact. 11. The children are left at home alone. I disapprove of it, they are too small. 12. They were invited to the disco. I've heard about it. 13. I'm sure he asked you not to phone after 11 p.m. Have you forgotten it? 14. I beat him at tennis, and he wasn't pleased at all. He hated it. 15. Our teacher is displeased. This student always does his exercises badly. 16. The children are making such a noise. Can't you stop it? 17. Are you not surprised? Your friend was introduced to our greatest singer. 18. We will spend our holidays abroad. My husband insists on it. 19. He decided to give up sports. I couldn't understand it. 20. We were pleased. He was invited to take part in the conference.

Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. То, что ваши дети смотрят фильмы ужасов, не может вас не беспокоить. 2. Вы не возражаете, если окно оставить открытым? 3. Не полагайся на то, что я помогу тебе с этой работой. 4. Он расстроился при мысли, что Дэн уедет от них. 5. Я боялся, как бы Джон не попал в аварию. 6. Она не осознает, что ее мужу угрожает опасность. 7. Полицейский удивился, что заключенный признал свою вину. 8. Вы не будете против, если я открою дверь? 9. Представь себе, ей хотелось знать, что его беспокоит. 10. Она настаивает на том, чтобы ему разрешили принять участие в соревнованиях. 11. Пожалуйста, извини меня за то, что я тебе не писал. 12. Все зависит от того, выиграют ли они этот матч. 13. Он настоял на том, чтобы Анну немедленно пригласили сюда. 14. Я не одобряю его за то, что он влез в это дело. 15. Он никогда не простит тебе, что ты его подвел. 16. Я не возражаю против того, чтобы вы отправились в Англию. 17. Вы упомянули, что в прошлом году он был в больнице. 18. Извините, что прерываю вас. 19. Мы не можем рассчитывать на то, что погода будет хорошая. 20. Вы помните, я вам говорила, что мой муж инженер.

The gerund as subject

As a rule the gerund as subject occupies the initial position in the sentence.

e.g. Knowing everything isn't always good.

However, the gerund-subject may stand in postposition in sentences opening with the introductory subject *it* after the predicates expressed by such phrases as *to be (of) no use (no good, useless), to make all the (no) difference,*

to be a waste of time, etc., and also with the construction *there is* with the formal subject *there*. In the latter case the gerund is preceded by the negative pronoun *no*.

e.g. It is of no use trying to get in touch with her.

It makes no difference having a talk with him or sending him a letter.

Of course, I'm scared. There's no denying that.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as subject. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. It is no use crying over spilt milk. 2. Working in the lab helps you to learn English better. 3. Inviting people to tea or coffee instead of dinner is a way of saving money. 4. There is no denying the fact. 5. It makes all the difference getting some extra money. 6. It was no good taking the little darling up to town, she got only tired. 7. Reading French is easier than speaking it. 8. It makes no difference going there by bus or by taxi. 9. It's a waste of money buying things you don't need. 10. There is no accounting for his bad mood. 11. Marrying somebody for his looks is not reasonable. 12. It was useless having a date with him. 13. It is awfully hard work doing nothing. 14. Talking mends no holes. 15. Being impolite is totally alien to the British character. 16. There was no arguing with my parents. 17. Going in for sports did her a lot of good. 18. For a woman, being needed is everything in life.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentences. Use the gerund-subject in the initial position.

1. It requires patience to look after children. 2. It's not easy to master a foreign language thoroughly. 3. It's always been very dangerous to climb the western slope of Everest. 4. It's bad for her figure to eat between meals. 5. It's very useful to sleep in the open air. 6. It's sometimes important to be helped. 7. It was a great mistake to act in that way. 8. It is necessary to call off the meeting. 9. It is interesting to learn about other cultures. 10. It is healthy to get up early and not to stay up late. 11. It is a good thing to be free and alone if you are tired of big cities. 12. It is useless to learn rules without examples. 13. It was lovely to have a holiday in winter. 14. It was difficult to teach him French.

Exercise 3. Join the two sentences to make one sentence with a gerund as the subject.

Model: Kate is a teacher. It's hard work. – Being a teacher is hard work.

1. He never goes out. That must be boring. 2. They share a flat. This sometimes causes arguments. 3. John doesn't have any friends. This must

make him lonely. 4. He missed the train. It depressed him. 5. Mark delivers lectures at Stanford University. It takes up a lot of his time. 6. He is a system analyst. It requires good mathematical ability. 7. The employees turn up late each morning. It has made the manager furious. 8. Telephone people at times when you know they are busy. It makes your conversation shorter. 9. Carol looks after old people. It's tiring. 10. Helen is a nurse. It's hard work. 11. He lost his twin sister at the age of fourteen. That probably affected him for life.

Exercise 4. Complete a sentence. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as subject with the introductory *It* or *There*.

Model: There's no... (to fix the alarm-clock). – There's no fixing the alarm-clock.

1. It's no use... (to worry about it). 2. Is it any good... (to turn to him for advice)? 3. There's no... (to prevent him from it). 4. It was useless... (to compete with this firm). 5. It was a pleasure... (to ski in the mountains). 6. There was no... (to get the best-seller). 7. It was such fun... (to have a big party). 8. There was no... (to avoid another scandal). 9. It will be of no use... (to ask them to come). 10. There is no... (to predict her future). 11. It's no good... (to deceive your parents). 12. It was quite a surprise... (to meet him in Paris). 13. There is no... (to know what may happen next). 14. It's useless... (to hope for his assistance).

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences using gerundial phrases as subjects.

Model: ...isn't easy. – Climbing to the top of a mountain isn't easy.

1. ...is a demanding job. 2. ...turned out to be a mistake. 3. ...has changed my life. 4. ...requires great skill and concentration. 5. ...is a complicated process. 6. ...is a waste of time. 7. ...was a real disappointment. 8. ...will only add to your problems. 9. ...is my cherished dream. 10. ...is out of the question. 11. ...was her constant passion. 12. ...is like a dream come true. 13. ...was painful. 14. ...won't be of any use. 15. ...is the best thing while travelling.

Exercise 6. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Переходить реку в этом месте опасно. 2. Изучение иностранного языка занимает длительное время. 3. Спорить с ним – это только напрасно терять время. 4. Нет объяснения такому провалу. 5. Есть ли смысл гулять под дождем? 6. Воспитание детей – сложный процесс. 7. Тем, что ты будешь надоедать ему, ты только рассердишь его больше.

8. В такое время года есть только одна возможность добраться туда – это самолетом. 9. Нет никакой разницы, придешь ты или нет. 10. Невозможно убедить его не делать этого. 11. Курение опасно для здоровья. 12. Переписка с англичанами помогает совершенствовать язык. 13. Важно ежедневно заниматься утренней гимнастикой. 14. Сон на открытом воздухе очень полезен. 15. Чтение книг по истории Англии – приятное и полезное занятие для будущего учителя английского языка. 16. Поездка к морю была необходима всей семье. 17. Нельзя отрицать, что он поступил правильно. 18. Мой любимый вид спорта – плавание. 19. Развлекать гостей довольно сложно. 20. Ему никак не угодить. 21. Бесполезно звонить ему, его в это время не бывает дома. 22. Бесплодная трата времени – смотреть сериалы. 23. Встреча с ней казалась хорошим завершением дня.

The gerund as predicative

When the gerund is used as part of a compound nominal predicate it functions as a *predicative*.

e.g. Her hobby is painting.

The gerund as predicative is sometimes preceded by the preposition *like*.

e.g. At the time their quarrel looked *like* going on forever.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as predicative. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. John's hobby is collecting all sorts of butterflies. 2. The important part is helping people so that they can live normal lives. 3. To cross the stream in the place meant walking knee-deep in the water. 4. The worst thing for her was being sent away from her family. 5. What he loves best in the world is playing tennis. 6. The main thing to do in this situation is getting away as soon as possible. 7. The problem was helping them regularly. 8. The only service you can do him is keeping quiet. 9. But this seems like going to a friend for a reference. 10. The next thing to do is cleaning the flat.

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences using a gerund or a gerundial phrase as predicative.

Model: My hobby is... . – My hobby is fishing.

1. Her ambition is... . 2. She said that her only regular duty was... . 3. Her intention was... . 4. The first thing to do will be... . 5. Most interesting hobbies are... . 6. The only way out was... . 7. Her first thought was... . 8. My next step will be... . 9. The teacher's task is... . 10. The most important

thing is... . 11. His principle was... . 12. Every student's dream is... . 13. Her favourite pastime is... . 14. The only chance was... .

Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Следующий шаг состоял в том, чтобы попытаться убедить их принять наши условия. 2. Мечтой Джона было зарабатывать на жизнь и помогать матери. 3. Единственный выход – расстаться с ним. 4. Главное – отговорить его от этой поездки. 5. Его хобби – коллекционировать монеты. 6. Худший вариант – прийти без приглашения. 7. Мое предложение состоит в том, чтобы обсудить этот вопрос на предстоящем собрании. 8. Что ему всегда хотелось, так это делать только то, что ему нравится. 9. Быть влюбленным – значит все время думать об этом другом человеке. 10. Важной частью его работы является присмотр за детьми. 11. Самым большим его желанием было рассказать ей все. 12. Мой план заключался в том, чтобы провести там год, пока я не выучу испанский язык. 13. Читать его романы было все равно, что плавать в чистом озере. 14. Единственно разумным будет уйти как можно быстрее. 15. Главным для нас было читать как можно больше книг в оригинале. 16. Восемьдесят процентов успеха заключается в том, чтобы оказаться в нужный момент в нужном месте. 17. Сложность заключалась в том, чтобы рассказать ей правду.

The gerund as part of a compound verbal predicate

In combination with phasal verbs the gerund forms a compound verbal phasal predicate. The phasal verbs denote various stages of the action, such as its beginning, continuation, or end. The most common phasal verbs followed by the gerund are: *to begin, to start, to burst out, to continue, to go on, to keep on, to cease, to finish, to give up, to leave off, to stop*.

e.g. The doctor continued examining the patient.

Note: The gerund in this function can't be used and only the Infinitive is possible

1) when the finite verb is used in the continuous form

e.g. It is beginning to drizzle.

2) when the subject denotes a thing, not a living being

e.g. The clock began to strike.

3) with the verbs *to understand* and *to see* (in the meaning of *to understand*)

e.g. I began to understand the situation.

Note: Note the difference in the meaning of *stop + a gerund* and *stop + an infinitive*.

stop + a gerund
= to end an action,
to finish doing something
The gerund in this case is part of a
compound verbal phasal predicate
e.g. Stop shouting.

stop + an infinitive
= to stop so that you can do something
The infinitive in this case is an adverbial
modifier of purpose
e.g. We stopped to buy a paper.

There is also some difference in the meaning of *go on + a gerund* and *go on + an infinitive*, though it doesn't tell on the syntactical function of the whole.

to go on + a gerund
= to continue doing
e.g. Go on talking.

to go on + an infinitive
= to do something different, to do the
next thing.
e.g. We took out the weeds and went
on to plant the flowers.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund used as part of a compound verbal phasal predicate. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. She continued working after her illness. 2. My doctor advised I'd give up eating starchy foods. 3. Tom went on talking with my mother. 4. On hearing the joke everybody burst out laughing. 5. The rest of us had finished eating, but Cave had cut himself another slice of cheese. 6. He kept on smiling at her and speaking. 7. Start reading the novel now. 8. The detective began questioning her about the car accident. 9. We left before the orchestra ceased playing. 10. I'm a vegetarian. I stopped eating meat 10 years ago. 11. She left off reading the text at page nine.

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences using the gerund as part of a compound verbal phasal predicate.

1. Roger went on... (to speak with energy and warmth). 2. I began... (to paint a year ago). 3. She continued... (to talk about her holiday all evening). 4. Why don't you tell him to stop... (to play the radio all night)? 5. You must begin... (to work harder). 6. He ceased... (to work at the report). 7. Your health will improve as soon as you give up... (to smoke). 8. I can't remember where we left off... (to copy out the text). 9. She kept on... (to interrupt me while I was speaking). 10. Have you finished... (to do your homework)?

Exercise 3. Insert an infinitive or a gerund.

1. She got annoyed because her husband stopped (look) in every shop window. 2. I'm beginning (realize) how difficult this is. 3. She got a degree in Physics and then went on (take) a course in Applied Maths. 4. The water began (boil). 5. Just stop (talk) and listen for a moment. 6. If we hadn't turned the music off they'd have gone on (dance) till morning. 7. His father began (understand) that he was lying. 8. I had just started (eat) when the waiter took my plate away. 9. We stopped (buy) food in the store because we were hungry. 10. He continued (drink) strong drinks. 11. She began (see) how to do it. 12. They stopped (produce) refrigerators because of their workers' strike. 13. Look! It's beginning (rain). 14. She went on (talk) about her illness for hours. 15. My friends are beginning (make) a film. 16. She couldn't begin (unpack). 17. We stopped (buy) food in the store because the owner raised the prices. 18. The article went on (say) that Miss MacLean was born in Dublin and still had relations living there. 19. The alarm-clock began (ring). 20. When her husband came she continued (watch) TV. 21. Without waiting for his reply she started (gather) the plums. 22. Do stop (make) this awful noise! 23. I'll never begin (understand) how he thinks. 24. We've only stopped (buy) some petrol.

Exercise 4. Translate into English.

1. Он непрерывно поглядывал на часы и, выпив чай, сказал, что должен возвращаться. 2. Теперь я начинал понимать кое-что. 3. Вскоре я перестал быть полезным им. 4. Несмотря на дождь, мы продолжали ждать. 5. Утром он начал переносить вещи в комнату. 6. Больной бросил принимать лекарство. 7. Я рассмеялся и перестал задавать ему вопросы. 8. Он продолжал упорно звонить в гостиницу, спрашивая, нет ли для него каких-либо сообщений. 9. Мы закончили работу над этой проблемой. 10. Вам следует прекратить купаться в море, так как погода стала очень холодной. 11. Он начал заниматься спортом, когда ему было пятнадцать лет. 12. Она продолжала говорить, не обращая внимания на наши слова. 13. Девочка расплакалась. 14. Все было ясно. Они прекратили допрос заключенного. 15. Все то январское утро телефон настойчиво звонил в моем кабинете. 16. Он продолжал настаивать на своем.

The gerund as direct object

As a direct object the gerund follows a number of transitive verbs, some of which take only the gerund, while others may be followed either by the gerund or by the infinitive.

As a direct object the gerund may also follow the adjective *worth* after which the active gerund has passive meaning.

The following verbs are followed only by the gerund:

to admit	to detest	to mention	to resent
to appreciate	to escape	to mind	to resist
to avoid	to enjoy	to miss	to risk
to consider	to excuse	to postpone	to suggest
to contemplate	to fancy	to practise	to understand
to delay	to forgive	to put off	can't help
to deny	to imagine	to recollect	can't stand

e.g. They enjoyed having a guest that evening.

He admitted taking the money.

I can't understand his/him leaving his wife.

Some verbs can be followed by either a gerund or an infinitive, usually with a difference in meaning. The most important cases are:

to allow	to forget	to like	to propose
to advise	to hate	to permit	to regret
to try	to mean	to prefer	to remember
to forbid	to intend		

With *remember*, *forget*, *regret* the difference is connected with time. The gerund refers to things that happen earlier (before the remembering, forgetting, or regretting took place); the infinitive refers to things that happen after the remembering, etc.

remember + a gerund

= remember what one has done, or what has happened

e.g. I remember seeing this man before.

forget + a gerund

= forget what one has done, or what has happened

e.g. Have you forgotten meeting me 2 years ago?

regret + a gerund

= to be sorry for what has happened

e.g. I regret saying what I said.

like + a gerund

= enjoy

e.g. I like going to the cinema.

remember + an infinitive

= remember what one has to do

e.g. Please, remember to close the window.

forget + an infinitive

= forget what one has to do

e.g. Don't forget to put out all the lights before you leave.

regret + an infinitive

= to be sorry for what one is going to say

e.g. I regret to say I feel ill.

like + an infinitive

= to choose to..., to think it right to...

e.g. Tom likes to do the washing up immediately after the meal.

allow, advise, forbid, permit
+ a gerund

is used when there is no personal object

e.g. He doesn't allow smoking in his office.

love, hate, prefer + a gerund

is used when we refer to a general statement

e.g. Do you prefer typing letters to writing them by hand?

try + a gerund

= to test, to make an experiment

e.g. Try holding your breath for a minute.

mean + a gerund

= to involve

e.g. I agree if the job won't mean moving to another area.

propose + a gerund

= to put forward for consideration

e.g. "Half past six," said Mike, "what do you propose doing?"

need + a gerund

= needs to be done

e.g. The house needs painting.

allow, advise, forbid, permit
+ an infinitive

is used with a personal object

e.g. He doesn't allow anyone to smoke in his office.

love, hate, prefer + an infinitive

is used when we refer to one particular occasion

e.g. I prefer to wait here.

try + an infinitive

= to attempt an action, to make an effort

e.g. Try to understand.

mean + an infinitive

= to intend

e.g. He means to get at the truth, however long it can take.

propose + an infinitive

= to intend

e.g. He didn't propose to forgive them this time.

need + an infinitive

= have to do

e.g. I need to borrow some money to repair the roof.

After verbs taking a direct object and an objective predicative the gerund is preceded by a formal introductory *it*. The most common verbs in this case are *to find, to think, to consider*.

e.g. I think *it* no use your waiting for them.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as direct object. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. Forgive my ringing you up so early. 2. He resented me being promoted before him. 3. I appreciate your giving me so much of your time. 4. I couldn't help laughing when I saw him wearing those trousers. 5. Have you forgotten

giving me the money? 6. Let's postpone leaving until tomorrow. 7. The batteries in this radio need changing. 8. She risks losing all her money. 9. I can't imagine George riding a motorbike. 10. Would you mind my using your phone? 11. If a thing is worth doing at all it is worth doing well. 12. If you can't turn the key try putting some oil in the lock. 13. Try to avoid making him angry. 14. I loved reading about all those gods and goddesses when I was young. 15. Oh, how I dislike being interrupted! 16. I can't understand you being angry. 17. He enjoyed teaching and knew that he did it well. 18. What do you recollect doing a fortnight ago? 19. I think it exciting our taking part in the conference. 20. We don't permit smoking in this restaurant.

Exercise 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What should you avoid doing? 2. What should you consider doing? 3. What can't you imagine doing in the morning? 4. What do you usually put off doing? 5. What do you recollect doing a week ago? 6. What can't you help doing on weekends? 7. What do you usually hate doing? 8. What can you risk doing once in a while? 9. What does your friend detest doing? 10. What doesn't your friend mind doing? 11. What does your friend enjoy doing? 12. What does your friend dislike doing? 13. What has your friend denied having done? 14. What has your friend admitted having done?

Exercise 3. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form (gerund or infinitive).

1. Would you mind (shut) the window? I hate (sit) in a draught. 2. I can't understand her (behave) like that. 3. I arranged (meet) him there. 4. I'm glad I don't have to work such long hours as Susan. I wouldn't like (work) eighty hours a week. 5. I hate (ask) you personal questions, but it's part of my business, I can't help it. 6. I regret (inform) you that your application has been refused. 7. I remember (visit) Paris when I was very young. 8. I forgot (go) to the chemist's on my way home. 9. If you want to stop coughing, why don't you try (drink) some water? 10. Please remember (lock) the door on your way out. 11. They forbid students (smoke) in the faculty building. 12. They forbid (smoke) in the faculty building. 13. I regret (tell) you that there's been an accident. 14. He regretted (stay) in the same job so long. 15. I wish (see) the manager. 16. She likes her children (go) to the dentist every six months. 17. I couldn't help (overhear) what you said. 18. Try (forget) it; it isn't worth (worry) about. 19. He hates (answer) the phone, and very often just lets it (ring). 20. Would you mind (put) your pet snake somewhere else? 21. He warned her (not touch) the wire. 22. The police suspect him of trying (sell) stolen goods.

23. He wore dark glasses (avoid) (be) recognized. 24. The librarian doesn't allow us (talk) here. 25. The librarian doesn't allow (talk) in the reading hall. 26. He urged us (work) faster. 27. Most people prefer (spend) money to (earn) it. 28. I resented (be) unjustly accused and asked him (apologize). 29. I didn't mean (offend) anyone. 30. My friend is writing a scientific paper. It means (work) in the library a lot. 31. We need (start) at once, or we may be late. 32. The house needs (repair). 33. Would you like (have) a look round? 34. Do you fancy (watch) the rugby match on TV this evening? 35. Have you forgotten (lend) him your track-suit? He'll need it soon. 36. Mr. Levin won't be this week – I suggest (get) a temp to cover his workload. 37. She advised them (inform) the police about the accident. 38. You know, Jane likes (give) advice, and on the day Eve arrived, the girl was advised (change) the colour of her hair. 39. She couldn't help (attract) by the fact that she was being looked at. 40. She tried (explain) the situation but he refused (listen) and went on grumbling. 41. He tried (persuade) them to sign a contract.

Exercise 4.

A. There are 14 verbs in the box. Seven are followed by an infinitive and seven by a gerund. Put the verbs into the correct column.

agree	avoid	choose	deny	miss	plan	recall
admit	arrange	consider	decide	manage	practise	refuse
Infinitive				Gerund		
.....					
.....					

B. Here are three conversations which use some of the verbs from the part above. Complete each conversation by using a verb from the box. You must decide whether to use a gerund or an infinitive.

stay	meet	see	get	have
------	------	-----	-----	------

1. A: Sorry, I missed ... you last week. I was feeling so ill that I decided ... in bed; that's why I didn't manage ... to the meeting.

B: Well, never mind, we've arranged ... another meeting next week; we're planning ... at about two o'clock in the usual place.

attack	give	steal	drop	see
--------	------	-------	------	-----

2. A: The accused doesn't admit ... the money, and he certainly denies ... the cashier. The cashier is refusing ... evidence because she can't recall ever ... the accused before.

B: In that case, I expect the police are considering ... the charges.

go	speak	sit	visit
----	-------	-----	-------

3. A: When I heard we could afford a holiday, I chose ... Italy. But then Roger said he wanted to avoid ... in the sun and he also wanted to practise ... German.

B: So is that why you agreed ... to Germany instead?

Exercise 5. Match the sentence halves on the left with the correct ending (a or b) on the right.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. I tried to push the car | a) but I couldn't move it. |
| 2. I tried pushing the car | b) but the engine still wouldn't start. |
| 3. He stopped eating | a) in a little restaurant outside Oxford. |
| 4. He stopped to eat | b) when he found an insect in his food. |
| 5. I tried to tell him a joke | a) but I couldn't remember it. |
| 6. I tried telling him a joke | b) but he still wouldn't laugh. |
| 7. Did you remember to go | a) to Paris in 1999? |
| 8. Do you remember going | b) to the Post Office, or shall I go tomorrow? |
| 9. I regret to tell you | a) that you must leave this school forever. |
| 10. I regret telling you | b) my secret; you've told everyone. |
| 11. He stopped to smoke a cigarette | a) but he still smokes cigars. |
| 12. He stopped smoking cigarettes | b) and then he went back to work. |

Exercise 6. Make one sentence out of two. Use either a gerund or a to-infinitive.

Model: Daniel didn't call at the shop to take the cake. He forgot. –
Daniel forgot to call at the shop to take the cake.

1. Polly didn't phone me. She forgot. 2. Sophie missed her chance to get a medal at school. She regrets it. 3. The house looks shabby. We must paint it. It needs it. 4. The singer didn't think he could sing that difficult song. He didn't even try. 5. Mike was rude to his mother. He didn't mean it. 6. I left the door open. I didn't lock it. I forgot. 7. It's a pity we didn't visit Jane. I would like it. 8. He once saw the Beatles. He will always remember it. 9. I wanted to close the window. I tried, but I couldn't. 10. I told John and he told everyone. Now I regret it; everyone knows! 11. She remembered their appointment. So she met him at the restaurant. 12. He used to smoke a lot. But he stopped 5 years ago. 13. We had been playing tennis for hours. And still we went on with the game.

Exercise 7. Translate into English. Use infinitives or gerunds.

1. Ты помнишь, как ты привез виноградный сок в этот дом в то утро?
2. Он любил находиться в обществе своих родственников.
3. Они забыли пригласить меня.
4. Она не возражала против того, чтобы быть одной в коттедже.
5. О, я думаю, вам понравится жить здесь, когда наступит лето.
6. Возможно, что Молли пожалела, что она так много болтала.
7. Остальные, без суеты, согласились принять участие.
8. «Послушайте! Почему вы так меня не любите?» – «Ну, наверное, потому, что именно вы заставляете меня чувствовать, что не стоит жить.»
9. Этот фильм стоит посмотреть. Вам не сможет не понравиться прекрасная игра актеров.
10. Он намеревался начать свое расследование с осмотра сада.
11. Он терпеть не может, когда его хвалят.
12. Они не могли не рассмеяться при виде клоуна.
13. Я помню, он громко смеялся, когда рассказывал эту историю.
14. Он старался избежать встречи с кем-нибудь, кого он знал.
15. Ее друзья обещали прислать ей работу. Мне не хотелось оставлять его одного в горе, и я предложил отвезти его к себе домой.
17. Попробуйте носить солнцезащитные очки. Вы почувствуете себя намного лучше.
18. Я предложил поехать туда на машине, но мои друзья не согласились.
19. Окна в этой комнате очень грязные; их необходимо вымыть.
20. Он попробовал изменить порядок слов в предложении.
21. Она забудет и не скажет Джону о письме.
22. Он сожалеет, что ему придется остаться дома.
23. Он сожалеет, что сказал мне неправду.
24. Она предпочитает все делать сама без чьей-либо помощи.

The gerund as prepositional object

As a prepositional object the gerund may follow (a) monotransitive verbs, (b) ditransitive verbs taking a direct object and a prepositional object, (c) adjectives and statives and (d) participle II, generally used as a predicative.

(a)

to agree	}	to	to count	}	on	to decide against
to object			to depend			to feel like
to look forward			to rely			
to take			to insist			
to hear	}	of	to persist	}	in	
to learn			to consist			
to think			to succeed			
to dream			to result			
			to believe			

e.g. I'm looking forward to his coming.

Happiness consists largely in having true friends.

(b)

to accuse smb.	}	of	to thank	}	for
to suspect			to blame		
to prevent	}	from	to praise		
to stop smb.			to punish smb.		
to discourage			to reproach		
			to sentence		

to assist	}	in	to congratulate smb. on
to help			to warn smb. against

e.g. You should be punished for driving carelessly.
 What prevented him from becoming a professional singer?

(c)

to be afraid	}	of	to be good / clever / bad at
to be (un)aware			to be responsible for
to be (un)conscious			to be sorry about
to be capable			to be keen on
to be fond			
to be ignorant			
to be proud			
to be sick			
to be sure			

e.g. She is keen on John passing this exam.
 If only I were capable of doing that!

Note: The stative *afraid* can be followed by either a gerund or an infinitive with a difference in meaning.

be afraid + a gerund

= not to want to do smth. because there's a possibility that smth. bad will happen
 e.g. I don't like dogs. I'm always afraid of being bitten.

be afraid + an infinitive

= dare not do smth.
 e.g. The streets in this city are not safe at night. Many people are afraid to go out.

(d)

to be accustomed	}	to	to be annoyed	}	with / at
to be used			to be (dis)pleased		
to be absorbed	}	in	to be surprised	}	at
to be engrossed			to be disappointed		

to be engaged }
to be interested } in to be tired }
to be scared } of

to be bored with }
to be excited about }

e.g. He was so engrossed in watching the game that he didn't notice the cold.

I was tired of doing much the same thing every day.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerund construction. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. Did they suspect the man of being a spy? 2. What prevented him from coming to the wedding? 3. He apologized for keeping me waiting. 4. The children were excited about going on holiday. 5. He was unconscious of Anna standing beside him. 6. She dreamed of somehow being able to help her step-mother. 7. The old lady was engaged in making clothes for her neighbours' children. 8. She assisted her husband in building the house. 9. The quarrel resulted in his mother leaving the house. 10. He succeeded in finishing his thesis. 11. My friend warned me against doing business with this firm. 12. We were disappointed at having lost the game. 13. We decided against moving to Paris. 14. Sid is sick of hearing about your sulks every time he comes home. 15. Thanks for phoning. 16. She was used to seeing him at the office.

Exercise 2. Insert prepositions.

1. Do you feel ... visiting your friend? 2. I congratulated Peter ... passing the exam. 3. They accused me ... telling lies. 4. I thanked her ... being so helpful. 5. He thinks ... changing his job. 6. Willie is scared ... being sent away. 7. You should insist ... the lock being changed. 8. He is quite excited ... being among us again. 9. I don't say I'm proud ... cheating him out of 300 dollars. 10. After all, I'm fairly used ... keeping my mouth shut. 11. Eden said, "I'm sorry ... the car being cold." 12. She hadn't succeeded ... making her sister talk. 13. Did she seem to object in any way ... your visiting the house. 14. Time passes quickly when you are absorbed ... reading a good book. 15. He was unaware ... being followed. 16. You can't prevent life ... going on and changing. 17. Liberty consists ... doing what one desires. 18. He will persist ... smoking though he is unwell. 19. She was displeased ... being introduced to her own niece. 20. They have decided ... buying a new car. 21. He isn't very good ... taking decisions quickly. 22. They don't approve ... her getting married to James. 23. The police suspect him ... drug smug-

gling. 24. She is sure ... having seen you. 25. Is he accustomed ... working hard? 26. I'll never agree ... changing my plan. 27. He is engaged ... writing a book. 28. He is blamed ... insulting his teacher. 29. He scolded me ... not having let him know. 30. Who will help me ... hanging these pictures? 31. A teacher shouldn't get tired ... explaining things to his pupils.

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences. Use the proper preposition and the proper form of the gerund of the verbs given in parenthesis.

1. The complicated rules will discourage people (to play) the game. 2. The weather is terrible tonight. I don't blame you (to want, not) to go to the meeting. 3. I believe (to discuss) things openly. 4. If you don't book in advance, you can't rely (to find) a hotel room. 5. I look forward (to see) you next time I'm in town. 6. Frank believes animals should be protected from hunters. He objects (to kill) wild animals for sport. 7. She is thinking (to become) a rock star. 8. The speaker was annoyed (to interrupt) every other moment. 9. He insists (to pay) for his work done. 10. He is not used (to speak to) like that. 11. Debbie is really excited (to go) abroad for the first time. 12. I'm bored (to wait) here doing nothing. 13. They're talking (to build) a new sports center. 14. We congratulate you (to complete) your work. 15. If he persists (to marry) the girl, it will mean absolute ruin for him. 16. She took (to wear) jeans. 17. I wondered if I ought to apologize (to write) the letter. 18. I was tired (to wear) charity clothes. 19. At the time I was keen (to get) an independent income. 20. Are you scared (to walk) alone through the dark streets at night? 21. The tourists complained (to get, not) any sleep. 22. Andrew is very fond (to tell) jokes. 23. I'm pleased (to go) for a fitting tomorrow. 24. We are interested (to start) a discussion group. 25. Thank you (to help) me carry the packages to the post office. 26. You are capable (to do) better work. 27. They couldn't stop him (to do) stupid things. 28. We reproach people (to talk) about themselves. 29. We were worrying (to be underdressed) for the occasion. 30. I didn't feel (to read) his new novel. 31. Can we meet tonight or will you be again engaged (to complete) your work? 32. The man was disappointed (to admit, not) to the meeting. 33. I found him absorbed (to watch) a new video film. 34. The four-year-old was blamed (to break) the glass candy dish. 35. The angry look on his face stopped me (to speak) my mind.

Exercise 4. Combine each pair of sentences into one. Use a gerund with the proper preposition.

Model: The firemen stopped the fire. It didn't spread. – The firemen stopped the fire from spreading.

1. My friend apologized. He broke my cassette-player. 2. I thanked him. He told me the news. 3. The surgeon succeeded. He transplanted the kidney and saved the patient's life. 4. He blames me. He says I think only about myself. 5. Jane congratulated Ted. He got a Ph. D. in Medicine. 6. The police should punish the driver. He broke the speed limit. 7. The customer complained. He was given a bad umbrella. 8. Higher prices will discourage people. They won't buy things. 9. The police prevented the crime. It didn't take place. 10. People blamed the driver. He didn't stop at the crossroads. 11. The workers have accused the management. They say the management is doing nothing to change the dramatic situation. 12. She is very fat and the doctors do not approve of it. They think she shouldn't eat so much.

Exercise 5. Make up a simple sentence. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase.

1. They accused their friend of the fact that he was not a man of his word. 2. I suspected that she was making things hot for her enemies. 3. We insisted that she should reject your terms. 4. He succeeded and made fortune out of some canal business. 5. I'm looking forward to the day when you are in the mood of playing music for me. 6. She wasn't aware that you had accepted our terms. 7. I rely on the hope that you will do me justice. 8. They were indignant that you were not calling things their proper names. 9. She felt in the mood to talk business (to feel like). 10. They were guilty that they had not enquired into the matter. 11. We were disappointed that the picture had no great value. 12. She dreamed that sooner or later they would come to an amicable agreement. 13. She complained that they were not strong enough to endure such trials. 14. He objected to the fact that Mrs. Broad should stay in the house any longer. 15. She was unconscious that she had said the wrong thing. 16. Tom insisted that he should drive Ann to the station.

Exercise 6. Give answers to the following questions. Use a gerundial construction as prepositional object.

Model: The children watch TV every day. What does their mother object to? → She objects to the children watching TV every day.

1. Michael went back on his word. What are you surprised at? 2. She is ill. What does the doctor insist on? 3. I waited for him, but he never came. What was I disappointed at? 4. We asked John to help us. What did he agree to? 5. Mary has come back. What are you pleased at? 6. Bill has won the first prize in chess tournament. What are his friends proud of? 7. Bob is fond of prompting at tests. What does the teacher object to? 8. Jack usually stays up

late. What do his parents insist on? 9. He always does everything well. What is his mother sure of? 10. My friend failed in the exam. What were his parents greatly displeased at? 11. The students were noisy at the lecture. What was the lecturer annoyed at? 12. They often smoke in the office. What does their boss object to? 13. Nick is late again. What is the teacher angry at? 14. Everybody helps Ann. What is she used to?

Exercise 7. Complete the sentences using the gerund as prepositional object.

1. He succeeded in 2. What prevented you from 3. I am fond of 4. They haven't thought of 5. My sister was never tired of 6. I am looking forward to 7. I offered to fetch his things, but he insisted on 8. Do you object to ... ? 9. He thanked me for 10. You should be punished for 11. My mother warned me against 12. He was unaware of 13. We are sorry about 14. The secretary was disappointed at 15. I was displeased at 16. He was too used to 17. The children were absorbed in 18. She assisted me in 19. I don't feel like 20. Nothing could stop me from

Exercise 8. a) Complete the second half of the sentence with the verb in the -ing form. b) Add the name of a person in your group for whom you think this might be true. It doesn't have to be very serious!

Model: David enjoys wasting (waste) time.

1. ... hates ... (watch) football matches. 2. ... is interested in ... (learn) languages. 3. ... likes ... (sit) in the sun and ... (listen) to pop music. 4. ... soon gets tired of ... (do) the same thing. 5. ... is good at ... (organize) parties. 6. ... loves ... (argue) and ... (discuss) things. 7. ... is fond of ... (collect) things. 8. ... doesn't approve of ... (smoke). 9. ... is thinking of ... (become) a rock star. 10. ... dislikes ... (save) money. 11. ... can't stand ... (watch) romantic films.

Exercise 9. Translate into English. Choose the correct preposition.

1. Я полагаюсь на то, что это письмо будет отослано вами вовремя. 2. Он ответственен за то, чтобы сад содержался в порядке. 3. Он оставил письмо, обвиняя ее в том, что она обманула его. 4. Я настаиваю на том, чтобы вы ответили им немедленно. 5. Вы можете рассчитывать на то, что он даст вам точную информацию. 6. Тогда я заподозрил его в том, что он меня дразнит. 7. Не было ничего, что могло бы помешать ему вернуться в Париж. 8. Он извинился, что задержал меня. 9. Я уверен,

что ты вполне способен справиться с ситуацией. 10. Я был немного разочарован тем, что встретил Чарльза. 11. Он был раздражен на нее за то, что она втянула его в эту ссору. 12. Он упрекал себя за то, что не попытался поговорить с нею. 13. Ты явно умеешь держать язык за зубами. 14. Ей удалось еще больше ухудшить ситуацию. 15. Как это ты уговорил (talk into) ее поехать с тобой на море? 16. Я заинтересован в том, чтобы найти ее. 17. Брат не осознавал, что он сделал что-то плохое и обидел своего друга. 18. Некоторое время он не давал (stop from) ей думать об этой трагедии. 19. Я удивился, что он вообще женился. 20. Он почувствовал, что устал от своей беспомощности. 21. Он любил (fond) смеяться над теми, кто робок. 22. Я хотел поговорить с ней, но она вся была поглощена музыкой. 23. Ей было приятно, когда ее расспрашивали о ее новой книге. 24. Она была благодарна ему за то, что он понял, что ей не хочется говорить о себе. 25. Мы настаивали на том, чтобы они начали переговоры немедленно. 26. Доктор привык выслушивать всяких людей. 27. Я думаю о поездке в Америку этим летом. 28. Может, он просто боится полюбить. 29. Отец часто обвинял меня в том, что я отношусь к дому как к отелю. 30. Он совсем проснулся и был склонен (feel like) почитать, но единственной книгой в комнате была библия. 31. Не полагайтесь на то, что достанете билеты перед отправлением поезда, закажите их заранее. 32. Все счастье моей жизни зависит от того, полюбите ли вы меня или нет.

The gerund as attribute

When used as an attribute, the gerund is most often preceded by a preposition, mostly by the preposition *of*. It generally modifies abstract nouns, such as: *air, art, business, chance, danger, habit, hope, idea, impression, intention, knowledge, method, necessity, opportunity, pleasure, possibility, question, recollection, risk, sign, way, prospect, misfortune*.

e.g. They discussed different methods of teaching foreign languages.

I have no intention of going there.

The gerund may also be preceded by the prepositions *for, in, at, about* and *to*. But they are by far less common than *of*.

These prepositions are found after a limited number of nouns which regularly require their use. They are the following:

For – apology, instruction, explanation, reason, excuse, plan, passion, gift, reputation, talent, motive, grounds.

In – experience, use, skill, interest, sense, harm, difficulty, hesitation.

At – amazement, astonishment, attempt, delight, surprise, irritation, disappointment.

About – obsession, fantasy.

To – objection.

He has no objection to being sent there.

The doctor left three different medicines with instructions for giving them.

When a gerund modifies a concrete noun it is preceded by the preposition *for* and the whole gerundial phrase as attribute expresses the purpose or destination of the thing mentioned.

e.g. A herb is a plant for adding flavour to food.

The gerund-attribute may also precede the noun it modifies. Then it is used without a preposition. In this case the modified noun does not denote the doer of the action expressed by the gerund but usually denotes the object of the action expressed by the gerund.

e.g. A swimming pool – a pool for swimming

A diving suit – a suit for diving

A singing teacher – a teacher of singing

Together with the modified noun the gerund-attribute makes an attributive phrase. In this case the gerundial attributive phrase should be distinguished from the participial attributive phrase, which differs from the gerundial one in meaning. In the participial phrase the modified noun is the doer of the action expressed by the participle.

e.g. A dancing girl – a girl who is dancing

A burning house – a house that is burning

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as attribute. Translate the sentences into Russian. Note the prepositions preceding the attributes.

1. I had given up hope of ever hearing from him. 2. He said that he had no chance of learning the truth. 3. Did he have any special reason for doing that? 4. There doesn't seem to be any sense in wasting more money. 5. Her parents were terribly upset at the thought of her giving evidence. 6. She had a real passion for reading detective stories. 7. I saw no harm in asking a few questions. 8. They had no hesitation in describing the situation as ridiculous. 9. After three months I got an obsession about having a place of my own. 10. After a while I began to have a feeling of being watched. 11. I have no experience in building houses. 12. The prospect of travelling with two elderly very dull people made me regret my hasty decision yesterday. 13. I was mak-

ing up my mind to another attempt at persuading him to do it. 14. There was no point in going further. 15. I feel the need for seeing you again.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentences. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute.

Model: I have an idea to write a short story. – I have an idea of writing a short story.

1. Little children have a big capacity to learn nursery rhymes by heart. 2. I have no intention to go there. 3. There are different ways to do it. 4. Ann's boss disapproved of her objection to take a computer course. 5. We have no purpose to change the flat in the near future. 6. He was trying to find a way to earn a little money. 7. He made no attempt to stand up. 8. I had no opportunity to speak to them. 9. There is often a temptation to judge somebody. 10. They can't find any means to make her leave him. 11. The thought she would leave soon was unbearable. 12. There is no chance that we shall come there in time. 13. She took a peculiar delight in the fact that he was Peter's son. 14. She gave no sign that she heard that he had slammed the door. 15. Our teacher has a good idea to take us to Moscow in the summer. 16. I am fed up with my sister's habit to put things in the wrong place. 17. He hates the idea to be alone on the weekend.

Exercise 3. Join the sentences paraphrasing them. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute. Use the noun suggested as a noun modified by the attribute.

Model: Jack often flies off the handle. He can't explain why. – Jack can't explain the reason for flying off the handle.

1. I'm sure one can improve the design. There's a way to do it. (way)
2. It was necessary to pay the rent before the end of the week. She realized it. (necessity)
3. We wanted to measure it. We couldn't find a proper instrument. (instrument)
4. You want to make arrangements for them. You should know whether they are going to book a hotel room. (intention)
5. He is certain that he is right to do it. He has no hesitation in it. (hesitation)
6. The costumes are made in a very skilled way. He has had a lot of experience. (experience)
7. She was given an opportunity to discuss it with him. She couldn't but take it. (chance)
8. Nick wants his friend to go there. His friend thinks there is no sense in it. (sense)
9. Kate knows how to arrange a good party. If you ask her she will tell you about it. (idea)
10. They told him a lie. They couldn't find any excuse. (excuse)
11. She objects when strict rules are imposed on her children. Her husband doesn't approve of her objection. (objection)

Exercise 4. Open the parenthesis. Use the proper preposition and the proper form of the gerund of the verbs in parenthesis.

1. Sheila was gay, and had set herself the task (to teach) me to take an interest in painting. 2. She had great difficulty (to show, not) her feelings. 3. Ann has a pleasant gift (to keep) the conversation general. 4. She cherished her delight (to call) a woman of title by her Christian name. 5. I didn't want to run the risk (to meet) Tom coming back from work. 6. He was frightened at the thought (to leave) home. 7. There doesn't seem to be much point (to come). 8. Tom and Dave were both in the highest spirits, and had clearly no intention (to part) from me. 9. When I asked him what first gave him the idea (to be) a painter, he was unable or unwilling to tell me. 10. Paul had no hesitation (to accept) the help. 11. When society requires to be rebuilt, there is no use (to attempt) to rebuild it on the old plan. 12. She sometimes gave an impression (to be) older than she really was. 13. He was depressed by the necessity (to come) to a decision. 14. I repeat, that was one of my reasons (to give) you this news today. 15. She has a wonderful talent (to get) the best out of people. 16. If there is a chance (to save) them it's your duty to try. 17. She didn't like his habit (to smoke) a cigar after dinner. 18. He was full of apologies (to hurt) her. 19. Mary had no experience (to drive) a car. 20. Mike had no objection (to share) domestic chores with his wife. 21. I think, the art (to teach) requires tolerance and patience. 22. We can understand your surprise (the exam, to postpone). 23. He seemed in the best of tempers at the prospect (to spend) the evening away from his family. 24. He had the great misfortune (to see) by his father. 25. He would sit up straight in his bed with his feet tucked under him so that you had the impression (to receive) by a rajah. 26. The boy showed his skill (to build) model boats. 27. He admired his way (to do) things well. 28. She gave no sign (to inform) of their arrival. 29. Imagine his surprise (to see) me. 30. Also there was always the possibility (I, to run) into Ann herself.

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences using the gerund as attribute.

1. He is sure to have an opportunity of 2. He described the method of 3. He has a reputation of 4. I have really no intention of 5. She had great difficulty in 6. It will be a good idea of 7. John had no hesitation in 8. I feel the need for 9. We have no objection to 10. I am not much in the habit of 11. He spoke in the hope of 12. We can understand your disappointment at 13. She has no confidence in 14. I have already planned a way of 15. She possessed to a remarkable degree the power of... . 16. He had a better chance of 17. Is there any sense in ... ? 18. Larry couldn't explain the reason for

Exercise 6. Translate the sentences into English. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute.

1. Конечно, у меня было то преимущество, что я очень хорошо знал этого человека. 2. Когда он говорил, создавалось впечатление, что он нервничает и неловко себя чувствует. 3. Есть у кого-нибудь возражения против того, чтобы я повидался с ним? 4. Я с трудом открыл дверь из-за массы газет и писем, лежавших на полу. 5. Не было никакого смысла сидеть в комнате целый день. 6. Я не мог вынести мысли, что она так несчастлива и так далеко. 7. Как ты думаешь, у нас есть шанс, что нам поверят? 8. У меня есть основания желать сохранить этот дом. 9. У него была привычка засиживаться до поздней ночи. 10. В феврале он уехал на восток с намерением продать свое дело и поселиться в Нью-Йорке. 11. Утром шел дождь, и она отказалась от всякой надежды попасть в бассейн. 12. Не было возможности купить дешевый магнитофон. 13. У меня не было колебаний в том, чтобы помочь им. 14. Вопрос об увеличении им зарплаты обсуждается уже месяц. 15. Я знал, что моей хозяйки не будет дома до позднего вечера, поэтому не имело смысла идти домой. 16. Я обычно нахожу способы развлекать себя, когда я остаюсь дома один. 17. Я рад, что имею возможность разговаривать с вами, доктор. 18. Мысль о расставании никогда не приходила нам в голову. 19. Он понимает важность изучения иностранных языков. 20. Он выразил большое удивление, услышав это. 21. Я имел удовольствие познакомиться с вашим отцом на днях. 22. У вас нет причины подозревать его. 23. У него было мало опыта в преподавании английского языка. 24. Какие современные методы обучения иностранным языкам используются в вашем университете?

The gerund as adverbial modifier

Owing to the variety of prepositions which may precede the gerund in the function of an adverbial modifier, a gerund may have different meanings.

The gerund may be used as an adverbial modifier of:

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| a) time | e) concession |
| b) reason | f) condition |
| c) manner | g) purpose |
| d) attendant circumstances | |

a) adverbial modifier of time

Due to the meaning of the prepositions preceding the gerund it may indicate

a) priority (*after, on/upon, since*)

b) simultaneity (*in, at*) and

c) posterity (*before*)

e.g. On entering the room he at once distinguished some changes.

In reading the poem she learnt it by heart.

Before giving him a call think the whole matter over.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as adverbial modifier of time. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of time and say whether the gerund denotes priority, simultaneity or posterity. Translate the sentence into Russian.

1. At seeing the sweets in her mother's hands the girl smiled. 2. On returning home from school I noticed a small statuette on our living-room shelf. 3. I was to walk over to my grandmother's before going on home. 4. In telling tales about his friends he was never ashamed. 5. He had not written to her since leaving. 6. I took my temperature and, upon finding it was a hundred point four, went back to bed again. 7. After failing his first exam at university, he moved away to a small town in the South. 8. I paused outside the parlour door, on hearing my mother's voice. 9. In crossing the street look first to the left and then to the right. 10. Before digging his garden he bought some rare kinds of roses and apple-trees. 11. Since selling his dog her grandpa has never had any pets. 12. At seeing him at the theatre she realised that he hadn't left for Paris. 13. At first he couldn't explain. After thinking it over he hit upon the explanation. 14. On hearing the tragic news, she fell at once into an alarming state of agitation. 15. In travelling abroad she has an opportunity to polish her English and Italian.

Exercise 2. Match the parts of the sentences. Choose the proper adverbial modifier of time expressed by a gerundial phrase.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. On recognising my friend's wife | 1. we've never sent the linen to the laundry. |
| 2. Since getting the first prize | 2. you can go and buy a ticket. |
| 3. In taking your English exam | 3. I normally use the front door. |
| 4. After getting your visa | 4. he attended driving classes. |
| 5. At hearing her name | 5. she felt shy. |
| 6. In getting off a bus | 6. the old woman felt very tired. |
| 7. Before buying a car | 7. you can't speak Russian. |
| 8. After walking four miles | 8. ha hasn't got any more. |
| 9. Since buying a washing machine | 9. I said hello to her. |

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences using the gerund as adverbial modifier of time.

Hearing, answering, leaving, passing, looking, reading, racing.

1. She looked at the paper, after ... out this question. 2. Before ... the little old lady grasped his arm. 3. He spent those nights after ... at his mother's house in Green Street. 4. He found an endless excitement in ... at their faces and ... them speak. 5. Nick considered before 6. She seemed excited on ... this. 7. Poirot had looked up at the staircase in..., and shook his head in a dissatisfied manner.

Exercise 4. Paraphrase the sentences. Replace Participle I by an adverbial modifier of time expressed by a gerund or a gerundial phrase.

Model: While talking with her he felt excited. – In talking with her he felt excited.

1. Having found the house he rang the doorbell. 2. Seeing him in London I could hardly recognize him. 3. While crossing the street look out. 4. Having thought for a moment the man agreed to help me. 5. Hearing the song she remembered her childhood. 6. Turning the light on he saw a stranger in the room. 7. Seeing that the strap of her roller skate was loose she bent down and tightened it. 8. Entering the sports club I saw my old friend. 9. While crossing that bridge one has to walk and not drive. 10. Having heated the boiler she took a bath. 11. Seeing the policeman he ran downstairs to open the door. 12. One day returning to his hotel, he found a note in his room. 13. While writing his report, he remembered that he had forgotten to mention some facts. 14. Entering the room the girl glanced a little wonderingly at the faces of the three men.

Exercise 5. Paraphrase the sentences using gerunds or gerundial phrases as adverbial modifier of time.

Model: I phoned Ann and then I went out. After... – After phoning Ann I went out.

1. Tom went to bed but first he had a hot drink. Before 2. The plane took off and soon afterwards it crashed. Soon after 3. She smiled when she saw him. At 4. When I recognized the servant, I whistled softly to him. On 5. After I have a short rest I'll have my dinner. After 6. When I woke up I felt much better. On 7. Before we started we sent a telegram to our friends. Before 8. When I left Moscow I corresponded with him. After 9. When I reached Kiev I found waiting for me an urgent request that I should go to my mother's place. Upon 10. Robert turned round

when he heard some steps. At ... 11. I called on my friend's before I left. Before ... 12. She was a trifle out of breath when she came to the third landing. On ... 13. When she had taken off her theatrical make-up she looked old and tired. After ... 14. When Eva reached the restaurant she found that she was the last to arrive. Upon ... 15. When she had turned the last page she decided that she would read the book again. After ... 16. When he was giving his friend a wrong address I knew he was perhaps playing a trick on him. In ... 17. When I received her letter, I changed my mind. On ... 18. She looked through the photographs again before she put them back. Before ...

Exercise 6. Work in pairs. Say what you would recommend your partner to do before / after / on (upon) / in / at doing something.

Model: – I think you should do your morning exercises before having breakfast.

– Well, that's a good idea. I usually do it after having a light breakfast.

Suggested variants:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. to have a shower | 6. to buy a house |
| 2. to go to bed | 7. to make a call |
| 3. to go to a party | 8. to leave the house |
| 4. to do one's home assignment | 9. to choose one's career |
| 5. to go on holiday | 10. to travel by train |

Exercise 7. Supply the required prepositions for the gerunds used as adverbial modifiers of time.

1. He poured milk into a jug from a carton in the refrigerator, then drank some milk himself ... putting the carton back. 2. ... swimming we lolled around on the beach and lay in the sun. 3. ... arriving in the apartment, I found out they were planning a little party for me. 4. ... reading the stories by E. Hemingway he hasn't read anything in the original. 5. ... doing your research in Linguistics it's necessary to pick up a lot of examples from English books. 6. I left the dining-room ... paying my cheque, and went out into the lounge. 7. ... nearing his enemy he felt his heart leap with terror. 8. ... going to his chief's office, he looked through the messages on his desk. 9. ... seeing my friend in that place I stopped. 10. ... reading the manuscript, he finished writing his play. 11. ... their going on expeditions to the Urals he has been to Mount Everest twice. 12. ... being reminded of her promise to spend the weekend with her children she decided to take them to the fair. 13. ... her being sent a fax they usually send her a contract by mail. 14. ... their getting divorced their elder son married and lived on his own.

Exercise 8. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Когда поднимаешься в горы, надо быть очень осторожным. 2. Посмотрев пьесу по телевидению, я сказал, что иду спать. 3. Эби не брился с самого прибытия в Париж. 4. Затем он отвернулся, чтобы поговорить с кем-то внутри дома. При этом он убрал руку с двери. 5. Получив записку от друга, он сразу позвонил ему. 6. После купания мы выпили пива и поели сэндвичей. 7. При заполнении анкеты надо давать точную информацию. 8. Увидев букет цветов, она все поняла. 9. Перед поездкой на юг купи новые очки от солнца и купальник. 10. По прибытии я был рад обнаружить, что я всех там знаю. 11. С момента окончания им Лондонского университета я видел его в Лондоне дважды. 12. Он секунду поколебался, прежде чем пересечь мост. 13. Видя, что я прохожу, они перестали разговаривать. 14. После того как он сделал несколько шагов в ее сторону, она подняла голову и снова заговорила. 15. Прежде чем машина завелась, я вынужден был попросить, чтобы меня подтолкнули. 16. Когда я услышал знакомый голос, я почувствовал волнение. 17. Войдя в сад, он заметил кого-то у дома. 18. С тех пор как я получил от него открытку, я ничего не слышал о нем. 19. Придя домой, я сразу начал делать домашнее задание. 20. Просматривая журналы, он наткнулся на очень интересную статью по экономике Англии. 21. Увидев вдали автобус, я бросился бежать к остановке.

b) adverbial modifier of reason

As an adverbial modifier of reason the gerund is introduced by the prepositions *because of, for, from, for fear of, on account of, through, owing to*.

e.g. What will you do with him for deceiving her?

We lost ourselves through not knowing the way.

He didn't open the letter for fear of reading something unpleasant.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of reason. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of reason. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. What would people think of me for letting her go. 2. She and Penny didn't even mention her name in Edward's presence for fear of turning the knife in the wound. 3. The administration refused to pay the salary on account of the miners' being on strike. 4. Because of his spending a bomb on restaurants and taxis his family couldn't save any money. 5. He profoundly ne-

glected the Press – not with the neglect which grows on writers from reading reviews of their own works. 6. They cancelled the train owing to the railway being blocked. 7. Mary couldn't prepare dinner for having no food at home. 8. He caught cold through getting his feet wet. 9. Sometimes Liza fell into light doze and Jim would keep very still for fear of waking her. 10. He was in hospital for having been run by a car. 11. He retired last month because of his mother being very ill. 12. The witness says that he couldn't let the man in on account of his being a stranger.

Exercise 2. Match the parts of the sentences. Choose the proper adverbial modifier of reason expressed by a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ann is keen on the history of England | 1. because of gaining weight. |
| 2. She eats a lot of rice | 2. for fear of waking him up. |
| 3. He was put on a diet | 3. not from his little daughter liking only fat cats. |
| 4. Some people prefer to keep dogs | 4. owing to making communication faster. |
| 5. The cats that live in Tom's flat are all fat | 5. on account of its being too personal. |
| 6. The judge dismissed the question | 6. owing to its being healthy food. |
| 7. The computer is so popular all over the world | 7. for the wind blowing. |
| 8. She can't teach him how to play the piano | 8. because of dogs making good pets. |
| 9. They decided not to call him so early | 9. for his having no interest in music at all. |
| 10. We couldn't hear each other's words | 10. for having English ancestors. |

Exercise 3. Paraphrase the sentences. Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of reason.

Model: Mike didn't come to the party because he had to look after his brother. – Mike didn't come to the party for having to look after his brother.

1. He preferred to keep silent for fear that he might say something inopportune. 2. The staff got out of that terrible situation because the committee had supported the company. 3. Helen's grandmother disliked doing the shopping because she was afraid to be deceived. 4. The child couldn't sleep because his parents were having a party. 5. She didn't like to go out in the evenings as she was afraid to meet a drunkard. 6. They refused to take the course because it was too long. 7. Mary was often late for work

because her alarm-clock was out of order. 8. He is slow to respond to new ideas because he is conservative. 9. He didn't find his wallet as he couldn't remember where he had put it. 10. Paul is pressed for money because he is not well paid. 11. Simon was fired because he was completely incompetent. 12. Little children are easily frightened when you teach them to ride a bike because they are afraid to fall down. 13. John avoided fighting a hooligan because he was scared to be beaten. 14. Ann started to cry when her mother switched off the light because she was afraid to stay alone. 15. Very few students answered the question but not because it was too difficult. 16. Ellen always arrives on time as her husband gives her a lift. 17. Andrew had to walk to the supermarket as he had no car. 18. Nora refused to go to the party because she was very busy.

Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into English. Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of reason.

1. Он упустил возможность поехать туда, потому что заболел. 2. Ее сестра никогда не путешествует морем, так как боится, что ее укачает. 3. Из-за того, что она тратила много денег на одежду, ее муж разорился. 4. Он не мог говорить из-за того, что задыхался. 5. Пришлось ехать на вокзал на такси, так как у мужа сломалась машина. 6. Дерек не смог приехать, потому что сдавал выпускные экзамены. 7. Они не хотели слушать ее бесконечные истории о романах, потому что у них не хватало терпения. 8. Она не заговорила с ним, боясь, что ее узнают. 9. Она продолжала молчать, так как боялась обидеть его, если расскажет всю правду. 10. Дик не любит скоростные автомобили, так как боится попасть в аварию. 11. Старушка не выходит одна зимой на улицу из страха, что упадет и сломает ногу. 12. Она не любила проводить вечера дома с мужем, потому что он все время валялся на диване. 13. Мама хочет стиральную машину, так как она экономит время и силы.

c) adverbial modifier of manner

As an adverbial modifier of manner the gerund generally occurs with the prepositions *by*, *in* or *without*.

e.g. Fools grow without watering.

The morning was spent in painting the fence.

You will achieve a lot by working hard.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund or gerundial phrase used as adverbial modifier of manner. Note the preposition preceding the adverbial modifier of manner. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I'm going to spend the morning in walking on the beach. 2. She dressed without making a sound. 3. Harry got the address of this college by looking it up in a college directory. 4. In doing the shopping and cooking she passed the day. 5. He greeted me noisily, but I cut him short by giving him the telegram. 6. Ann couldn't run four kilometres without stopping. 7. You begin learning a language by listening to the new sounds. 8. It's impossible to dust the top shelf without standing on the stool. 9. The whole month was spent in looking for the burglars. 10. Mature students in Britain can get a grant by applying to the local government. 11. Can't you speak without raising your voice? 12. She spent the evening in reading an interesting book.

Exercise 2. Match the parts of the sentences. Choose the proper gerundial phrase used as adverbial modifier of manner.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. One can enrich one's English vocabulary | 1. without even sleeping. |
| 2. I used to study all day, sometimes | 2. by travelling to English-speaking countries. |
| 3. The day was spent | 3. by using a washing machine. |
| 4. You can easily do the washing | 4. by taking extra music practice. |
| 5. She can make a strong impression on you | 5. without limping badly. |
| 6. You can improve your piano skills | 6. in sitting in front of the computer. |
| 7. Most of his time is spent | 7. without using an air-cushion. |
| 8. She made these little things | 8. in playing football. |
| 9. He taught the boy to swim | 9. by casting them from clay and painting them. |
| 10. The disabled person could hardly walk | 10. by dressing herself up in fancy clothes. |

Exercise 3. Paraphrase the sentences. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as adverbial modifier of manner. Choose the proper preposition.

Model: He is going to visit his friends in the morning. – He is going to spend the morning in visiting his friends.

1. Susan wanted to lose weight and she did. She ate less. 2. He spent the whole day having a drink in the bar. 3. Fred went out and looked for his first job and got it. 4. The film star killed herself. She took a bottle of sleeping pills. 5. It will take you three days to paper the walls in the living-room.

6. Bob got rich too. He married a rich woman. 7. Kate spent hours watching cartoons. 8. Children learn how to speak without teachers. They listen and they practise. 9. Face me, please. Otherwise you can't understand a word. 10. Richard often helps his brother. He gives him money and advice. 11. He did a repair job from time to time and managed to save some money. 12. They packed their things in the evening. 13. David learned how to play chess without a teacher. He watched his father play. 14. Get regular exercises and you can improve your physical condition. 15. When Hugo was in England he listened carefully and always spoke English. As a result he learned perfect English. 16. Fred worked 16 hours a day and he got rich.

Exercise 4. Complete the sentences using a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of manner.

1. The problem can be solved by 2. I like my friend's manner of listening to me without 3. I'm going to spend some time in 4. A child can provoke his parents to punish him by 5. She spent the whole day in 6. I don't want to distress her by 7. You can get an excellent mark without 8. He awfully embarrassed his wife by 9. She improved her listening comprehension by 10. The morning was spent in 11. You can spoil the party by 12. She can pronounce tongue-twisters ten times without 13. Hours were spent in 14. She might save herself a lot of trouble by

Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Алина быстро прошла мимо них, не оборачиваясь. 2. Вы можете улучшить свое произношение, читая вслух каждый день. 3. Он постарался выучить правило, перечитывая его несколько раз. 4. Мы провели утро, лежа на пляже. 5. Проблему можно решить тем, что все родственники дадут им взаймы деньги. 6. Его спасло то, что соседи вызвали полицию. 7. День прошел в сборах. 8. Ты можешь есть, не вытирая рот рукой? 9. Проект был усовершенствован тем, что дизайнер использовал новый метод. 10. Остаток жизни он провел, играя в гольф и развлекаясь с друзьями. 11. Она всегда говорит, не повышая голоса. 12. Он очень смутил Джейн тем, что обратился к ней. 13. Они обычно проводят утро, обсуждая насущные проблемы. 14. Моя сестра говорит по-английски без ошибок. 15. Я прервал его, подав ему чашечку чая. 16. Мы сократили путь, переплыв реку. 17. Его жена не умеет жить, не тратя денег налево и направо. 18. Она учила слова, не записывая их.

d) adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances

As an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances the gerund is preceded by the prepositions *without, besides, instead of*.

e.g. He went out without looking back.

Instead of being invited to the party he was sent on a business trip.

Besides being clever she was always very industrious.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I persuaded my uncle that it would be very good for my lungs if instead of staying at school I spent the following winter on the Riviera. 2. Then he left us without saying good-bye. 3. I found that besides being a philosopher he was an uncommonly good writer. 4. He bought pictures instead of buying me the things I wanted. 5. He put the letter away without reading it. 6. Instead of doing nothing go and help your little sister. 7. The burglars left through the window without anybody seeing them. 8. Why do you tuck your umbrella under your left arm instead of carrying it in your hand like anything else? 9. The cigarette burned down to my fingers and I threw it over the banister without putting it out. 10. She had many little things to do besides sitting idly in her house while waiting to be taken out by her boarder. 11. He wants to work in his study without his sons disturbing him. 12. Why did you go all round the field instead of walking across it?

Exercise 2. Match the parts of the sentences. Choose the proper adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances expressed by a gerund or a gerundial phrase.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Have a snack at a pizza-hut | 1. instead of being a chain-smoker. |
| 2. You can make a skirt yourself | 2. without having a lot of money. |
| 3. He'd better give up smoking | 3. instead of going to Mc. Donald's. |
| 4. When I was a student I could do | 4. instead of buying this expensive one. |
| 5. You sometimes can't talk on the phone with them | 5. without getting good advice. |
| 6. In this situation we couldn't do | 6. without being cut off. |
| 7. Tom can't fight | 7. without having red caviar for breakfast. |
| 8. We can get by | 8. without getting a black eye. |
| 9. Please, stay in and help me | 9. instead of doing the washing-up at home. |
| 10. Send the linen to the laundry | 10. instead of going to the party tonight. |

Exercise 3. Paraphrase the sentences. Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances

A.

Model: She went out and didn't tell me anything – She went out without telling me anything.

1. They came to the wedding. They were not invited. 2. He could tell the funniest joke. He didn't even smile. 3. She got married and nobody knew about it. 4. He translated the article and didn't use a dictionary. 5. She went out. She didn't switch off the iron. 6. He went out of the restaurant. He didn't pay the bill. 7. John brought us a bottle of French wine. He didn't take the money for it. 8. She left the house. She didn't lock the door. 9. She bought the dress and she didn't try it on. 10. He passed and didn't greet us. 11. The team won the game. They didn't have a good trainer. 12. She left and she didn't leave me a note.

B.

Model: I didn't do my homework. I went to the cinema instead. – Instead of doing my homework I went to the cinema.

1. She didn't punish the boy. She gave him a sweet instead. 2. He didn't help me. He kept bothering me instead. 3. She didn't get a pair of shoes. She got a pair of boots instead. 4. Nick didn't go hunting. He went fishing instead. 5. She didn't write a letter (as she had promised). She phoned instead. 6. They didn't look after the children properly. They went out five times a week. 7. He didn't bring me the radio. He brought me the record-player instead. 8. Buy a pair of sandals and don't wear high-heeled shoes in summer. 9. She didn't go to Italy. She went to Spain instead. 10. She didn't do the house. She went swimming instead. 11. You'd better buy a return ticket and not a one-way ticket. 12. Mary didn't go to a party. She went to a disco instead.

Exercise 4. Complete the sentences using a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

1. He took a bus into town instead of 2. She entered the room without 3. One can hardly get there without 4. He read a detective novel instead of 5. Tom was playing with his friends without 6. Americans like to eat out instead of 7. He chose a political career instead of 8. He is a chess player besides 9. Mike agreed with his parents without 10. Revise for your exam instead of 11. John and Sally coped with all their problems without 12. We got to the station just on time without

13. Guess how much I paid for this jacket without 14. It would be more sensible for him to save his money instead of 15. Now that I've become more health-conscious, I'll always grill food instead of 16. She usually leaves the party without

Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Фил сунул деньги в карман, не сосчитав их. 2. Он послал письмо вместо того, чтобы послать телеграмму. 3. Он ушел, не назначив встречи. 4. Вместо того, чтобы поехать на автобусе, они пошли пешком и опоздали на концерт. 5. Он пришел без приглашения. 6. Она разорвала письмо на мелкие кусочки, не читая его. 7. Кроме того, что он умен, он очень добр. 8. Вместо того, чтобы написать письмо самому, он попросил своего друга сделать это. 9. Вместо того, чтобы твоей дочери подметать пол каждый день, твой сын мог бы пропылесосить его. 10. Если бы не простуда, я бы сейчас работал, а не лежал в постели. 11. Он не может общаться с ними и не поссориться. 12. Он сел в машину и уехал, а его жена не видела его. 13. Они все уладили, причем их родители не давали им совета, как это сделать. 14. Он вернулся в отель и лег, даже не сняв ботинок. 15. Вместо того, чтобы пойти в школу, она отправилась в кино.

e) adverbial modifier of concession

As an adverbial modifier of concession the gerund is preceded by the prepositions *despite*, *in spite of*.

e.g. In spite of being tired, he continued working.

I'm glad it's all turned out well despite your going behind my back.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of concession. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of concession. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I don't ask any questions in spite of there being a lot of questions to ask. 2. He doesn't miss her despite not having seen her for a long time. 3. In spite of having been scolded she wasn't offended. 4. In spite of having spent the whole summer in the south, he is taken ill again. 5. Rob took his wife to the clinic despite her refusing to go there. 6. George got out of the difficulty in spite of not getting any help. 7. In spite of having been warned against it she decided to go out. 8. John went to his office in spite of being ill. 9. Paul managed to establish a new company despite his counterpart having let him

down. 10. The University public didn't like the film despite its being a hit. 11. Despite being blinded in his right eye in a battle off Corsica, H. Nelson was soon made an admiral.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentences. Use an adverbial modifier of concession expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

Model: Though she spends so much time on going to work she is never late. – She is never late despite spending so much time on going to work.

1. Although the weather was fine, he didn't go for a walk. 2. Although you are a little older than I, you belong essentially to the same generation. 3. Paul was considerably taller than she, though he wasn't big. 4. The words flowed from his pen, though he broke off from writing frequently to look up definitions in the dictionary. 5. The curtains were not yet drawn, though the lamps outside were lighted. 6. Although the sun had set, the heat hung heavy in the narrow street. 7. Though he spoke with a strong Russian accent his French was good enough. 8. Although it was only nine o'clock, there were few people in the streets. 9. Though the child was frightened she tried to pull herself together and calm him down. 10. Though his wife objected he sold the car to his friend. 11. Though she was very tired after work she decided to do the shopping. 12. The girl had no appetite though she had had no meal since morning. 13. The children liked their teacher though he was very demanding. 14. Jim couldn't compose music though he was good at playing the piano and the guitar. 15. I didn't see much of him though he lived nearby.

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences using a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of concession.

1. She took no notice of the boy in spite of ... 2. You can't interfere in this matter despite ... 3. Richard managed to find the thief despite ... 4. Laura refused to rewrite her test in spite of ... 5. He arrived on time despite ... 6. Steven didn't get the job in spite of ... 7. We have never gone for a holiday together despite ... 8. She couldn't sleep despite ... 9. Paul decided to go for a walk in spite of ... 10. Mr. Fish wasn't elected despite ... 11. They enjoyed the play despite ... 12. Mr. Snack liked fishing in spite of ...

Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Хотя дети ему мешали, ему удалось закончить работу. 2. Я не смог ответить на этот вопрос, хотя и прочел об этом много. 3. Хотя он и был очень занят, он пошел на вокзал встретить ее. 4. Хотя он и ничего не знал

о том, как вести дело, он хотел всем руководить. 5. Хотя ее одноклассники и учителя хотели устроить выпускной вечер, она не хотела туда идти. 6. Хотя книга была опубликована, мы нигде не могли ее купить. 7. Несмотря на то, что он обидел ее, она не хотела ему мстить. 8. Хотя солнце светит, все же довольно холодно. 9. Хотя операция была сложной, профессор Рогов справился с ней успешно. 10. Я не могла доверить ей свою тайну, хотя она и была моей близкой подругой. 11. Несмотря на то, что редактор внимательно читал рукопись, ошибка не была замечена. 12. Несмотря на свою занятость, они все же согласились приехать к нам в гости.

f) adverbial modifier of condition

As an adverbial modifier of condition the gerund is preceded by the prepositions *without, but for, in case of, in the event of*.

e.g. You will never speak good English without learning grammar.

In the event of being ordered to two ports of loading the steamer will not arrive at the port of discharge before May 15th.

But for meeting Mike, I shouldn't have become an English teacher.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of condition. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of condition. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. You won't enrich your vocabulary without making use of an English dictionary. 2. But for having learned English when a student I wouldn't travel abroad now. 3. For any popular play you can't get tickets without booking them in advance. 4. In the event of their causing you any real trouble, give me a ring. 5. He wouldn't have visited us without being invited. 6. In case of the contract being checked by the expert you may sign it. 7. You can't have a nice holiday without there being a river or a lake nearby. 8. The film director wouldn't shoot films every year but for being sponsored. 9. They would not have finished the work in time but for his helping them. 10. In case of getting the book let me know. 11. We can't have a meeting here without a table and fifty chairs being fetched.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentences. Use an adverbial modifier of condition expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction. Choose the proper preposition.

Model: If you return the book you'll be allowed to borrow another one. – In case of returning the book you'll be allowed to borrow another one.

1. If she were not so stubborn, she wouldn't have argued with you yesterday. 2. If they send you a telex, answer them right away. 3. I shouldn't have believed it if I hadn't seen it with my own eyes. 4. If you meet her, give her my best regards. 5. If you have no true friends you may feel lonely. 6. Don't be upset if he refuses to back you. 7. They would have got lost if they hadn't read the map carefully. 8. If you find another way out, will you inform me? 9. If he asks for references, tell him to apply to me. 10. He would have missed the train if he hadn't taken a taxi. 11. If Charles hadn't wound up his watch he would have overslept yesterday. 12. I can't call them unless I get their number. 13. If we hadn't been such fools, we would all still be together. 14. I might have persuaded her to change her mind if she hadn't been so obstinate. 15. If my brother goes to the market with me he will help me to carry the bags. 16. If Helen were not in low spirits she would join you. 17. You can't prove anything if you don't have a solid alibi. 18. She wouldn't lose things so often if she were not so absent-minded. 19. He wouldn't have come if you hadn't invited him. 20. Carol will study at university if she gets a grant.

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences. Use an adverbial modifier of condition expressed by the preposition *but for* + a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

Model: 1) He would have more free time ... – He would have more free time but for having to go to work every day.

2) He would invite her to the party ... – He would invite her to the party but for their having had a row.

1. She would have noticed her mother-in-law 2. I wouldn't be able to tell you about the play now 3. The situation wouldn't have been so tragic 4. He would have paid attention to this matter 5. Alice wouldn't have a sore throat 6. Ann would have acted differently 7. He would have failed at the exam 8. Your mother wouldn't have been angry 9. She wouldn't feel so miserable 10. Susan wouldn't have married Peter 11. I would have joined you 12. He certainly would not have recognized me 13. We shouldn't have called a doctor 14. His eyesight wouldn't be poor now 15. She wouldn't have burst into tears 16. The father wouldn't have punished the child 17. He would go hiking with us 18. The child wouldn't have woken up 19. The actor wouldn't get the leading part 20. George wouldn't always lose his spectacles

Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into English. Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of condition preceded by the preposition *but for*. Use the verb-predicative in the Subjunctive Mood.

1. Если бы он не отказался помочь нам, мы бы уже закончили работу. 2. Он бы не делал столько ошибок сейчас, если бы не пропустил столько занятий. 3. Не будь он таким рассеянным, он бы не забыл свой чемодан в поезде. Он без конца теряет вещи. 4. Если бы я не был так занят вчера, я бы поехал на вокзал проводить их. 5. Если бы Мария не совала нос в его дела, он бы не жаловался на нее. 6. Если бы я не пошел к ним вчера, мы бы ничего не знали об этом даже теперь. 7. Не будь он таким ленивым, он был бы одним из первых учеников класса. 8. Если бы он не был таким транжирой, жена могла бы откладывать деньги на летний отпуск. 9. Если бы я вчера не искупалась, то я бы, возможно, не простудилась. 10. Если бы она не пропустила столько занятий, она бы написала тест лучше. 11. Если бы женщины не занимались домашним хозяйством, они бы сэкономили массу времени. 12. Вы бы чувствовали себя лучше, если бы не ложились спать так поздно. 13. Если бы он не был способным, он бы не справился с этой работой. 14. Если бы ты не сказал мне правду, я бы так ничего и не знал. 15. Если бы он не прочитал рукопись, он не написал бы пьесу. 16. Если бы Ник не переехал в другой район, он бы жил сейчас рядом с нами.

Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English. Use an adverbial modifier of condition expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction. Choose the proper preposition.

1. Я не смогу выучить слова, если не буду их записывать. 2. Если бы ты не сделал половину работы, я бы не закончил ее вовремя. 3. Я не смогу сдать экзамен, если не прочитаю эту книгу. 4. Этот перевод нельзя публиковать, если ты не покажешь его автору рассказа. 5. Если они обвинят вас в этом, не принимайте это близко к сердцу. 6. Если бы яхту не ремонтировали, они отправились бы в путешествие на острова на следующей неделе. 7. Если бы я так не волновалась, я бы ответила лучше. 8. Ты не станешь хорошим спортсменом, если не будешь много тренироваться. 9. Он попросил сестру присмотреть за детьми, если он заболит. 10. Если вода окажется холодной, не позволяйте детям купаться. 11. Если бы они не знали его, они бы не стали ему помогать. 12. Если бы я вчера не приняла лекарство, я бы чувствовала себя хуже.

13. Нельзя получить работу, не пройдя собеседования. 14. В том случае, если письмо будет отослано сегодня, они получают его в понедельник. 15. Если вам станет нехорошо в самолете, примите одну или две таблетки. 16. Если вы увидите этот словарь, купите и мне экземпляр. 17. Дети не всегда могут действовать правильно, если им не сказать, что делать. 18. Если бы там не было его отца, могло бы случиться что-нибудь серьезное. 19. Если бы я не опоздал на самолет вчера, я бы сейчас купался в море. 20. Если окажется, что туфли ей малы, их будет носить ее младшая сестра. 21. Если вы встретите его, передайте ему, что мы его не забыли. 22. Не извинившись перед ним за нашу ошибку, нам не удастся уговорить его прийти. 23. Позвони мне сразу же, если возникнут какие-либо трудности. 24. Если найдешь ключ, положи его на стол.

g) adverbial modifier of purpose

An adverbial modifier of purpose follows the prepositions *for*, *for the purpose of*, *for the object of*, *with a view to*.

e.g. He addressed them for being given a piece of good advice.

They often showed the students historical films for the purpose of giving them an idea of the past.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of purpose. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of purpose. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. The story was changed for staging at the theatre. 2. He gave these instructions with a view to speeding up the shipment of the goods. 3. A Polish delegation arrived in Moscow for the object of conducting trade negotiations. 4. The Foreign Trade Arbitration Commission in Moscow has been established for the purpose of settling disputes between Russian trading organizations and foreign firms. 5. With a view to improving his ability to speak French he spends his holiday in France. 6. The hall is used for dancing. 7. She often asks them to give her a lift for having a little word with them on her way home. 8. The police arrived for the purpose of investigating the crime. 9. The plane was coming in for landing. 10. The government passed a new law with the object of increasing an old age pension. 11. We take an umbrella for not being caught in the rain. 12. They went sightseeing with a view to taking some photographs of different places of interest.

Exercise 2. Match the parts of the sentences. Choose the proper adverbial modifier of purpose expressed by a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. They sent the papers | 1. for buying a pair of shoes. |
| 2. We go to a shoe department | 2. with the object of doing what we liked. |
| 3. My mother went to Germany | 3. for the work being done secretly. |
| 4. A scanner is used | 4. for the clerk signing them. |
| 5. The friends went to the pub | 5. for having a gulp of fresh air. |
| 6. He hunted for a creative job | 6. with the object of studying it in detail. |
| 7. They concealed the information | 7. for visiting her relatives. |
| 8. People go for a walk | 8. for having a good time. |
| 9. The doctors came to the place of accident | 9. for examining things in hospitals, airports. |
| 10. He bought a lot of books on painting | 10. for rescuing people. |

Exercise 3. Paraphrase the sentences. Use an adverbial modifier of purpose.

Model: They went to Rome to see the sights. – They went to Rome for the purpose of seeing the sights.

1. I sent Mrs. Bacon a bunch of flowers to thank her for the party. 2. They listened to the news to get some more information about the accident. 3. We turned down the music not to disturb the neighbours. 4. Dick went to the post office to post a parcel. 5. We are organizing a “Fun Run” to raise money for the local hospital. 6. He drank lots of black coffee to keep awake. 7. He flirted with the girl to borrow some money from her. 8. We are installing solar heating to save energy. 9. I came to talk to you about a very important matter. 10. She took the pills regularly in order to get rid of her cough. 11. He went to the library to take the journals and books on history. 12. She always has a walk in the evening to sleep better at night. 13. Emma came to the house to look after everything herself. 14. Once a year John takes a week off to go on a fishing trip.

Exercise 4. Complete the sentences using a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of purpose.

1. A ladder is used for 2. They often write letters to her with a view to 3. He painted the house himself for 4. You should read the novel in the original for 5. The government passed a new law with the object of 6. I phoned her for the purpose of 7. One should listen to English

tapes for 8. They switched on the radio with a view to 9. He went on business to Minsk for the purpose of 10. They are building a new house for 11. Did you come to Spain for the purpose of ...? 12. He did it with a view to

Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English. Use an adverbial modifier of purpose expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

1. Я пишу все это, чтобы вы лучше понимали ситуацию. 2. Я ходил в Эрмитаж с тем, чтобы читать там древние рукописи. 3. Все было сделано для того, чтобы спасти его. 4. Он вызвал машину, чтобы отвезти нас на вокзал. 5. Я встал в 6 часов, чтобы не опоздать на утренний поезд. 6. Картины известных художников привозят в музей, чтобы показывать публике. 7. Зал был открыт для проведения в нем концертов. 8. Мистер Оуэн согласился принять делегацию, чтобы проинформировать их о своих возражениях. 9. Я прочел правило несколько раз, чтобы лучше понять его. 10. Он остался там, чтобы посмотреть, что произойдет. 11. Она принесла в класс карту, чтобы показать нам маршрут экспедиции. 12. Они всю ночь жгли костер, чтобы их заметили проходящие мимо суда. 13. Она делала все, чтобы угодить ему. 14. Я написал ему письмо, чтобы напомнить ему о его обещании. 15. Сюда приезжают для лечения. 16. Мне прислали интересный сборник стихов, чтобы я перевела его на немецкий язык. 17. Он пьет на завтрак черный кофе, чтобы повысить давление. 18. Он лег на диван, чтобы отдохнуть немного. 19. Вы приехали сюда, чтобы повидать семью или с другой целью?

The gerund and the verbal noun compared

Though coinciding in form with the non-perfect active gerund, the verbal noun is another part of speech and has no verbal features at all. The following table shows the main differences between the gerund and the verbal noun.

Being a form of the verb the gerund	Being a noun the verbal noun
1. has the verbal categories of voice and perfect. being done, having done	1. has no verbal categories. _____
2. cannot be used with an article. _____	2. can be used with an article. <u>The</u> acting was perfect. His appearance underwent <u>a</u> hasty tidying.

3. has no category of number. _____	3. has a category of number: can be used in the plural. sufferings, comings and goings
4. can take a direct object (the gerund of transitive verbs). I like <u>doing morning exercises</u> .	4. can take only a prepositional object. <u>The doing of morning exercises</u> was very good for me.
5. can be modified by an adverb. She burst out crying <u>bitterly</u> .	5. can be modified by an adjective. She could feel the <u>steady</u> beating of his heart.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerunds and the verbal nouns. State the difference in their use.

1. He was interrupted by the ringing of the telephone. 2. Upon reading this letter Shelton had once more a sense of being exploited. 3. He looked at us with a kind of cheerful cunning. 4. Her father took no notice of her comings and goings. 5. By travelling slowly we reached the ranch in safety. 6. When coffee was over, Colonel Fitzwilliam reminded Elizabeth of having promised to play to him. 7. She arose, but before she had time to get out of the room a loud rapping began upon the front door. 8. After writing a few pages, however, I became for some reason discontented and laid them aside for a time. 9. After dinner we sat for an hour or so near the window, without talking much. 10. Only the gentle ticking of the clock broke the silence. 11. The roaring of the flame was like a hurricane. 12. He began tidying the cabin, putting away his clothes and straightening the bed. 13. I have only a candle to see by, so I trust you will excuse my bad writing. 14. He said he was looking forward to meeting you again. 15. And the worst of it is that I shall go on doing exactly I was going to do in the first place. 16. There was the splashing of big drops on large leaves and a faint stirring and shaking in the bush. 17. There's no going back now. 18. The only sound in the darkness was the bubbling of the stream. 19. Washing the children and cleaning the flat took her a lot of time. 20. I turned round when I heard the soft closing of the door. 21. I remember descending that hill at twilight. 22. After a while he heard a strange rustling among the leaves in the near thicket. 23. She was sitting with her eyes shut, the sewing neglected in her lap. 24. As for Carrie, her understanding of the moral significance of money was the popular understanding, nothing more.

Revision

Exercise 1. State the syntactical function of the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction.

1. Paul took up his brush again and went on painting. 2. Before going in he looked in the window and the first thing he saw was a display of *When Pyramids Decay*. 3. It was no good pretending. 4. Most of our visit was spent in sightseeing. 5. I couldn't help laughing at the ease with which he explained his process of deduction. 6. This system has been working admirably for years without arousing any comment. 7. A cuckoo began calling from a thorn tree. 8. In the other hand he had the sharp knife which we used for cutting bacon. 9. Morel called her a fool for getting married, and was cool with his son-in-law. 10. He hated her being out of doors alone. 11. But the thought of parting with it now was more than Mrs. Bixby could bear. 12. Instead of sleeping at home, he's doing it here. 13. "If she thinks I'm going in after her without being asked, she's a bit wrong," said Frederick firmly to himself. 14. It grew worse as Alice grew up, for he soon saw I was more afraid of her knowing my past than of the police. 15. But there was no deceiving him. 16. It was like having a severe accident. 17. She enjoyed having Mr. Curry in the house. 18. They sat for some time longer in the sun, without speaking. 19. At any moment by turning the outside tap the room could be flooded with gas. 20. About this time the notorious Hell Row, which through growing old had acquired an evil reputation, was burned down, and much dirt was cleansed away. 21. At the door, after feeling in her purse and putting the key in the lock, she turned a moment and again raised her hand briefly. 22. Paying only three dollars for room rent seemed ridiculous. 23. Was it because you wouldn't prove an alibi for fear of compromising somebody in extremely high-toned society? 24. I think it's worth finding out what it is. 25. There's no knowing what it might be, my dear. We shall just have to wait and see. 26. I came with Jack Brendon yesterday, instead of going to work, and enlisted. 27. Mr. Thornhill said "cheers" several times and then suddenly burst out laughing. 28. Clara saw Paul's manner of bowing and shaking hands. 29. I took my weapon and bravely started walking. 30. It was like hunting in some wild place. 31. Mr. Curry had finished washing up and was resting his reddened wet hands upon the rim of the sink. 32. In uttering those words he was conscious of a girl coming down from the common just above them. 33. It was no good being impatient with him.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentences using the gerunds. Use prepositions or adverbs where necessary.

Model: They told the truth. You shouldn't deny it. – You shouldn't deny their telling the truth.

1. I'd like to speak to you frankly. I hope you don't mind it. 2. I was prepared to dislike Mr. Matthew even before I met him. 3. She is admitted to our closed circle. I object to it. 4. He was not only the author of brilliant short stories, but he was also a talented playwright. 5. That I was on the spot was a bit of luck for her. 6. After he had studied the weather forecast in great detail, he said he would go back to Paris. 7. She accepted the proposal. Her mother was displeased with it. 8. The whole neighbourhood was so dreary that he hated the thought that he would have to live there. 9. I regret that I said you were mistaken. 10. When I came back from work my son gave me a strange note. 11. It is necessary to mend the shoes. 12. He suggested that we should spend the day in the country. 13. Why do you insist that he should leave for Italy? 14. We are looking forward to the fact that you will spend the summer with us. 15. Marry is unable to resist chocolates. It's funny. 16. This woman's face attracted his attention as familiar for he remembered that she had passed by him several times. 17. I don't like the idea that I should go there. 18. We have no objections. She can take a holiday right now. 19. He didn't leave the house because he was afraid that he would meet someone who would recognize him. 20. There was little hope that we would catch up with them. 21. She regretted that she had told Ann her secret. 22. I told him a lie. I admit it. 23. You shouldn't risk your health like that. It's no good. 24. Nick wasn't sure that she would come because she hadn't phoned him. 25. One can't sell some foodstuffs if one doesn't wrap them up. 26. We knocked at the door, and we were admitted to the hall. 27. She was very clever, she could turn an old dress into a new one. 28. I told him that we were about to be turned out of our flat if we didn't pay the rent. 29. He is responsible that the letter is delivered only today. 30. They decided to spend their honeymoon in Florida though their parents disapproved of the idea. 31. She has no wish to do the flat every week. 32. If he were not a drunkard his wife and his children wouldn't suffer. 33. The house is too old and they will insist that it should be restored. 34. Everybody interfered in her affairs and that bothered her. 35. She passed her exams successfully. She was pleased with it. 36. I am really ashamed that I haven't written to you for so long. 37. I am disappointed. He is mixed up in some unpleasant affair again. 38. Jane boasted that she had bathed in the Mediterranean and in the Atlantic Ocean. 39. It is very strange but John denied that they had called at a number of European ports.

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences by using gerunds. Add a preposition after the gerund if necessary.

1. I considered ... the job but in the end I decided against it. 2. She stopped ... to classes when she got sick. 3. He kept on ... me while I was speaking.

4. Sometimes students put off ... their homework. 5. Unfortunately Jack insisted on ... only about himself during the whole evening. 6. People objected to ... so long. 7. She doesn't appreciate my ... after her. 8. They had to postpone ... away because their son was ill. 9. You must prevent him from ... this scene. 10. Sometimes young people complain about not ... by their parents. 11. The Porters' house is too small. They are considering ... a bigger house. 12. I don't fancy ... out this evening. 13. We were disappointed at ... the game. 14. She was pleased at ... such an expensive present. 15. He suspected her of ... arsenic (мышьяк) into his lunch. 16. Should I be justified in ... advantage of your position? 17. He was good at ... with irascible (раздражительный) clients. 18. Tom suggested ... fish for dinner. 19. What do you usually do in your free time in the evening? – I enjoy ... a good book. 20. You will have to get used to ... less if you want to lose weight. 21. I crossed the street to avoid ... him, but he saw me and came running towards me. 22. It was no use ... that I hadn't seen him. 23. "Would you mind my ... with you?" he asked, before I had finished 24. I don't think the windows need ... at this time of the night. 25. I began ... towards the bedroom window. 26. I am having difficulty sleeping at night. – Why don't you try ... sleeping tablets. 27. My house is only a short walk from here. It is not worth ... a taxi. 28. Mr. Miller gave no indication of ... his mind. 29. Jack Welles has a good chance of I know I am going to vote for him. 30. I haven't practised ... the piano for a long time. 31. I am thinking about ... a biology course next semester. 32. She went on ... Mike's telephone number. 33. I think, ... an English book in the original is much more interesting. 34. The baby went to sleep a few minutes after 35. He was taken to hospital unconscious after the accident. He died in hospital without ... consciousness. 36. She didn't get out of bed until ten o'clock in spite of ... at seven. 37. He got into the house by ... through a window, without ... by anyone. 38. I know my hair wants ... but I never have time to go to the hairdresser's. 39. The police accused him of ... fire to the building. 40. By ... to take ordinary precautions he endangered the life of his crew. 41. It's no use ... children to keep quiet. They can't help ... a noise. 42. There are people who can't help ... when they see someone slip on a banana skin. 43. He suggested ... a meeting and ... them decide the matter themselves. 44. My watch keeps ... – That's because you keep ... to wind it.

Exercise 4. Insert prepositions where necessary.

1. There cannot be any objection ... your seeing her personally. 2. Martha succeeded ... writing historical novels. 3. Tom dropped into a chair ... saying anything. 4. She denied ... having asked Albert to invite us. 5. You spoiled

everything ... being rude. 6. You can't have omelettes ... breaking eggs. 7. He put ... making a decision till he had more information. 8. Please forgive me ... interrupting you but would you mind ... repeating that last sentence. 9. He was very much worried over the possibility ... his plans being upset. 10. If you won't tell me, what's wrong, what's the use ... my being here? 11. In many countries of the Middle East husbands prevent their wives ... taking a job outside the home. 12. In spite ... being in danger Harold decided to tell the truth. 13. Maybe, he is surprised ... being much spoken of. 14. Some people seem to have a passion ... writing to the newspapers. 15. He was furious ... being mistaken for an escaped convict. 16. Newton, the famous scientist, was sometimes engaged ... working out difficult problems. 17. She was afraid ... going on public transport. 18. I hadn't asked for advice, I was quite capable ... advising myself. 19. What are your reasons ... refusing their invitation? 20. The others insisted ... accompanying them. 21. Most people who spend a holiday ... travelling take a camera with them. 22. They insisted ... the children being taken to the mountains. 23. I'm extremely fond ... travelling and feel terribly envious of any friend who is going anywhere. 24. He has no intention ... touring the country on foot. 25. She demonstrated an unusual skill ... gathering mushrooms. 26. She laughed at the thought ... Johnny looking after the house. 27. We see no importance ... spending so much time discussing the route of the trip. 28. We rely ... being informed about the flight. 29. I do apologize ... not letting you know before. 30. I'm very sorry ... losing my temper last night. 31. ... being interrupted by his wife he managed to tell the story from beginning to end. 32. We walked very carefully through the grass as we were scared ... being bitten by a snake. 33. The teacher was ignorant ... the students cribbing off each other. 34. You can make her happy ... her son being given back to her. 35. ... doing your aerobics it's good to have a shower. 36. They rejected our request and ... doing so they achieved their own goal. 37. She is unconscious ... her father having watched every step of hers. 38. There is no sense ... flattering her. 39. The use of such techniques resulted ... developing computer technology. 40. On board a big ship there is a library, a cinema-hall, billiard rooms which are used ... entertaining the passengers.

Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Ее удивление, когда она увидела Джека в казино, было неподдельным. 2. Отец часто упрекал детей за то, что они не заботились друг о друге. 3. Ночь у нас прошла в ожидании их звонка. 4. Я не понимал его, потому что он шепелявил. 5. Не было никаких колебаний в отношении того, чтобы сообщить им о результатах поездки. 6. У него был дар видеть

вещи, как они есть. 7. Крису как то не хотелось, чтобы над ним смеялись. 8. Я терпеть не мог, когда мне желали удачи. 9. Я не помню, чтобы я когда-либо была около их дома. 10. Он сказал это громко, не глядя ни на кого, и было неясно, к кому он обращается. 11. Он избегает встречаться со мной после нашей ссоры. 12. При виде жареной индейки на подносе он сказал, что это наилучшее угощение, какое только можно себе представить. 13. Нет объяснения ее безделью. 14. Их принцип состоит в том, чтобы все делать самостоятельно. 15. Они часто покупают детям подарки, но дети не благодарят их при этом. 16. Доктор настаивает на том, чтобы всем детям были сделаны прививки. 17. Покупка новой машины требует больших денег. 18. Худший вариант – давать им займы и не получать деньги обратно. 19. Он решил бросить курить, когда стал понимать, что это действительно вредно. 20. Президент все еще противится подписанию этого договора. 21. До прохождения теста я был уверен, что знаю английский. 22. Эта жидкость используется для подкрахмаливания (to starch) белья. 23. Не полагайся на то, что ты получишь ответ быстро. 24. Не стоит обвинять ее в том, что она подвела тебя. 25. Деб была разочарована тем, что не участвовала в выставке. 26. Мы с нетерпением ждем встречи с английскими студентами. 27. Они вышли из гостиной, не произнося ни слова. 28. Утро ушло на то, что я уговаривал его не ездить к ней. 29. Читая книги для «чайников» (for dummies), можно научиться работать с компьютером. 30. Болтая с подружками по телефону, она забыла о своих обязанностях. 31. Для получения медицинской помощи во время пребывания за границей надо получить страховой полис (to arrange insurance). 32. Шум в соседней комнате мешал мне думать. 33. Ей удалось сделать очень хороший перевод этого трудного текста. 34. Благодарю вас, что вы прислали мне такие красивые цветы. 35. Мы оставили мысль о покупке новой мебели. 36. Я не могу не любоваться этой чудесной картиной. 37. Папа возражает против того, чтобы я шел в театр с ней. 38. Я не одобряю того, что ты играешь в компьютерные игры. 39. Мы возвращались поздно вечером, не поймав ни одной рыбы. 40. Этот портфель настолько старый, что его не стоит хранить.

REVISION AND CONSOLIDATION

Exercise 1. Choose the best suitable variant.

1. We had our office ... last month. (a. redecorated; b. to have been redecorated; c. being redecorated; d. to be redecorated)

2. We saw Tyson ... his rival in the first round. (a. knocking out; b. to have knocked out; c. being knocked out; d. knock out)

3. People believe Norma ... in Paris. (a. of living; b. living; c. to be living; d. live)

4. I am not used (a. to be taken care of; b. to being taken care of; c. to take care of; d. for being taken care of)

5. Liz is known ... at Cambridge in the sixties. (a. to have studied; b. having studied; c. to have been studied; d. to be studying)

6. The negotiations ... at the conference-hall will soon be over. (a. holding; b. being held; c. having been held; d. are being held)

7. Jim admitted ... my computer, but he said he hadn't broken it. (a. using; b. to have used; c. of using; d. to be using)

8. Dr. Jones filled a pipe and then put it down ... it. (a. not litting; b. not lighting; c. without litting; d. without lighting;)

9. "Shall I give you a lift?" "I ... walk, thank you." (a. had better; b. had rather; c. would rather; d. would better)

10. I had no choice. I was made ... their terms. (a. accept; b. to accept; c. accepted by; d. to be accepted by)

11. ... to leave Molly alone, Don decided to stay till the party was over. (a. Not wanting; b. Not wanted; c. Without wanting; d. Without being wanted)

12. Pat put on her new hat and turned round (a. to be admiring; b. to admire; c. to be admired; d. to have been admired)

13. For the past few days Lily seems ... to strangers only. (a. having talked; b. to have been talked; c. to have been talking; d. to be talking)

14. Mary, have your husband ... the children to the zoo. (a. taken; b. taking; c. take; d. to take)

15. Although I ... the hooligan away, I terrified the postman as well. (a. succeeded to chase; b. succeeded in chasing; c. managed chasing; d. could chase)

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentences using participles and gerunds. Give several options, if possible.

1. Norman collected the parcel, but then he realised it was the wrong one. 2. Sue left the house, but first she checked that she had the keys. 3. Mark was parking his car when he noticed the wing-mirror was broken. 4. Julia cleaned the house, but then she fell asleep on the sofa. 5. Brian bought a new television, but first he checked all the prices. 6. Alan was skiing in Switzerland and met his friend, Ken. 7. Kate took two aspirins, and then she felt a lot better. 8. Sheila went out for the evening, but first she washed her hair.

9. Michael was taking a bath when he heard someone at the door. 10. First Trudy read the book, and then she decided she didn't like it.

Exercise 3. Correct mistakes in the sentences below.

1. Ever since I came into this silly house I have been made look like a fool. 2. "How old is John?" "He seems to be born in 1989." 3. There were a few lines having been written in pencil in the note. 4. Dick's manner reminded me of a frightening sheep run aimlessly to and fro. 5. While being in Australia Laura was fascinating by Vienna. 6. The coffee is too hot to be drunk. 7. Melinda decided to watch the pets to be playing for a while. 8. I insisted on my being charged with the task, but the boss wouldn't listen. 9. The boat was seen to have vanished in the distance. 10. Doctors claim having discovered a cure for this disease. 11. The suitcase was too heavy for me to carry it. 12. It made Alan angry to wait for people having been late. 13. It is your task to get across the river not being seen. 14. Hurry up, people, please, will you? The cleaning is to finish by midday. 15. Always check the oil before to start the car. 16. Do you really think *The Titanic* is not worth being watched? 17. The House of Lords is reported to have been reconsidered their decision. 18. Where has the boy having stood here gone? 19. Andrew decided to give up his second attempt in riding non-stop for 24 hours. 20. Felicity got Charlie finish his homework before he was allowed going out.

Exercise 4. Paraphrase the sentences using predicative constructions. Give several options, if possible.

1. Somebody stole all George's money. 2. People think that neither side wanted war. 3. We could see that Harry shot the gun. 4. We are thinking of hiring someone to paint the outside of the house. 5. Everybody thought that the painting had been destroyed. 6. Jill could hear how Jack was singing in the bathroom. 7. People say that Mrs. Turner was having business difficulties. 8. Your hair needs cutting. 9. The police think the jewels were stolen by one of the guests. 10. All of us saw that Helen missed the train. 11. It seems to me that the old lady was an opera singer. 12. There is a rumour that the escaped prisoner is living in Spain. 13. I've arranged that the window-cleaner should come on Thursday. 14. People believe that the two injured men were repairing high-tension cables. 15. Everyone knows that the Chinese invented gunpower.

Exercise 5. Open the brackets using infinitives, participles and gerunds.

1. The old man appears (travel) all over the world ten times and now (plan) his eleventh voyage. 2. (Eat) his lunch, Jack went upstairs. We could

hear him (hum) a tune there for a while. 3. Diana looks terrific, in spite of (spend) three nights (read) for her exam. 4. "Have you seen that film now (show) at the Odeon?" "Yes, it is just beginning (talk) about." 5. The musical has just opened on the London stage, already (win) 24 awards during its Broadway run, (include) 5 Tonys and a highly (prize) Grammy. 6. Roger is said secretly (compose) music for five years. 7. "In a way, (hold) out against the mobile phone seems pretty ludicrous." "But some people don't want (lasso) by technology. It's a trap." 8. After (cook) for several hours the meat turned out (be) still tough. 9. (Slide) into his chair at Luigi's, Pete ordered a black coffee. I knew he pretended (think). 10. "When will they have finished with the palace (build) over there?" "Well, I only know it is believed (start) thirty years ago."

Exercise 6. Open the brackets using infinitives, participles and gerunds. Insert prepositions if necessary.

1. She is the youngest person (swim) across the Channel. 2. I am interested (work) in Switzerland. Do you know anyone who could help me? 3. (Not know) what to do, Ian telephoned the police. 4. Half of the people (invite) to the party didn't turn up. 5. Lack of time prevented me (write) earlier. 6. Lydia suggested (climb) up the mountain. 7. Kevin decided (save) money (give) up smoking. 8. It's really terrible, seeing someone (cry) their eyes out (be) unable (help). 9. We congratulated the team (win) all their games. 10. Who is that girl (follow) by your boyfriend? 11. Paul is angry (not invite) to the party Agnes is giving tonight. 12. Mark was anxious (show) that he could cope with extra responsibility. 13. (Sleep) for twelve hours, Sylvia felt (relax). 14. "Pat failed the exam in spite (work) very hard during the term." "She deserves (pity)." 15. I saw the two cars (collide).

Exercise 7. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct forms.

1. It's no use (argue) with him. You might as well (argue) with a stone wall. He is incapable of (see) anyone else's point of view. 2. I'm delighted (hear) that you can come on Saturday. We are all looking forward to (see) you. Remember (bring) your rubber boots. 3. He stood beside a bush of pale roses (watch) the last bees (crawl) into the hive. He seemed not (pay) attention to Ann's cry. 4. On (tell) that she had just come in, he sent a maid to her room (ask) her to go down though he realized that it was no use (speak) to her again. 5. I can't help (be) grateful to him for all he has done for me. I've got used to (take) care of me. 6. She risks (lose) everything if she follows his advice. It is not worth (take). 7. I don't feel like (see) him. He is

said (make) an attempt to get in touch with Jane last month. 8. Let's (swim) across. – I'm not really dressed for (swim). What's wrong with (go) round by the bridge? 9. He soon got (know) most of them and even managed (learn) the greetings. Then they began (greet) him too on their way to work and sometimes would stop (talk) to him on their way home. 10. He resented (be) asked (wait). He expected the minister (see) him at once. 11. I have (stay) here; I'm on duty. But you needn't (wait); you're free (go) whenever you like. 12. Jack: Don't forget (take) a hacksaw with you. Ann: What's a hacksaw? And why should I (take) one with me? Jack: It's a tool for (cut) metal. You see, Tom is bound (get) into trouble for (take) photographs of the wrong things, and you'll be arrested with him. With a hacksaw you'll be able (saw) through the bars of your cell and (escape). 13. You look rather tired. You are unlikely (finish) the work in time. You'd better (go) home now. It's not worth (work) for another several hours. 14. He was made (leave) the town and didn't want to spend the last money on (rent) an apartment in the suburbs; this unexpected offer of shelter was too tempting (resist). 15. They tried their best (find) solutions to the problem, but finally they suggested (restore) the building and offered (help) us. 16. Before trains were invented people used (travel) on horseback or in stage coaches. It used (take) a stage coach three days (go) from London to Bath. 17. The hunters expected (be paid) by the foot for the snakes they caught. This meant (take) the snakes out of the sack and (measure) them. They seemed (expect) me (do) it; but I wasn't particularly anxious (be) the first (die) of snakebite. 18. I was just about (leave) the office when the phone rang. It was my wife; she wanted me (call) at the butcher's on my way home. 19. All day long we saw the trees (toss) in the wind and heard the waves (crash) against the rocks. 20. Let's (go) (fish) today. There's a nice wind. What about (come) with us, Ann? – No, thanks. I'm very willing (cut) sandwiches for you but I've no intention of (waste) the afternoon (sit) in a boat (watch) you two (fish). 21. He said, "I'm terribly sorry to (keep) you (wait)." I said, "It doesn't matter at all," but he went on (apologize) for nearly five minutes! 22. Peter: Wouldn't it be better (ask) Tom (leave) his camera at home? Jack: It would be no good (ask) Tom (do) that. It would be like (ask) a woman (travel) without a handbag. 23. I always try (come) in quietly but they always hear me (go) upstairs. It's impossible (climb) an old wooden staircase at night without (make) a noise. 24. Colonists appear (bring) the game to North America in the fifth century and that meant (open) new golf links. 25. He had her (write) her name on a registration list and (take) a seat in the waiting room until the nurse got a chance (check) her out.

Exercise 8. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Хозяйка приказала подавать обед. 2. Спектакль, который ставит Пинигин, обязательно будет иметь успех. 3. С этим человеком сложно иметь дело. 4. Прожив в Белоруссии 10 лет, он так и не выучил язык. 5. Эмили похвасталась, что похудела на 10 килограмм, бегая в парке по утрам. 6. Я случайно услышал, как вы позвали эту женщину. 7. Когда Билл был ребенком, он обычно дрался с соседскими детьми. 8. Не помню, чтобы я встречал Вас раньше. 9. Не заставляйте делать детей то, что они не хотят. 10. Вы уже починили машину? 11. Питер признался, что видел лорда Генри в тот вечер, но отрицал, что убил его. 12. Лили дала мне прочитать телеграмму. 13. Цветы завяли, так как их давно не поливали. 14. Не забудьте навестить Марка, когда будете в Париже. 15. Тони остановился, чтобы закурить. 16. Директор не разрешает пить в коридоре. 17. Он бросил курить много лет тому назад. 18. Извините, что заставил вас ждать. 19. Майк удивленно смотрелся в зеркало, как будто бы не узнавал себя. 20. Честно говоря, я был очень разочарован. 21. Оказалось, что Анна уже год занимается танцами. 22. Картина, нарисованная Робинном, произвела на меня сильное впечатление. 23. Просматривая старые журналы, я не мог не удивляться их стилю. 24. Агата первая поняла, что имел в виду профессор. 25. Не зная пароля, бесполезно открывать этот файл.

TEST. Choose the correct variant:

1. I remember... her an invitation. It's strange that she hasn't come.
a. to send b. having sent c. sending d. having been sent
2. I didn't notice anybody ... by.
a. pass b. to pass c. to have passed d. be passed
3. Why not ... him and ... her address?
a. calling and asking c. to call and to ask
b. call and ask d. calling and ask
4. His parents ... abroad, he lives with his aunt and uncle.
a. having worked c. working
b. being worked d. to be working
5. I don't think you were made ... it.
a. to do b. do c. to have done d. doing
6. He has never let anyone ... a report for him.
a. to make b. to be made c. make d. to have made

7. Do you remember... with them when you were a schoolboy?
 a. to have stayed b. to stay c. having stayed d. staying
8. Hadn't you better ... a doctor before taking this medicine?
 a. consult b. consulting c. to consul d. to be consulted
9. One more team member is known ... , as it was hard to complete the work on time.
 a. to be employed c. to employ
 b. to have been employed d. to have employed
10. There is no point in ... about these things.
 a. to worry b. worrying c. to be worrying d. to be worried
11. Would you mind ... up his telephone number?
 a. to look b. looking c. to looking d. to have looked
12. I'm looking forward to ... an appointment with this businessman.
 a. to make b. have made c. making d. having made
13. I'd like ... everything by the time I come back.
 a. to arrange b. arranging c. to have arranged d. to be arranged
14. Don't forget ... the travel agent's.
 a. to phone b. phoning c. to have phoned d. to be phoning
15. I will never forget ... her for the first time.
 a. to see b. seeing c. see d. having seen
16. He is said ... quite competent in this subject.
 a. being b. to be c. be d. to being
17. Remember ... the letters. It's urgent.
 a. to post b. to be posted c. posting d. having posted
18. Do try to make less noise. I'm trying ...
 a. to concentrate c. to be concentrated
 b. concentrating d. have concentrated
19. I am going to take the bus ... money.
 a. for to save b. saving c. to save d. by saving
20. I thought I saw Professor Davis ... in the library.
 a. working b. to work c. worked d. works
21. Thank you for inviting us, but my husband is not really interested ...
 a. in going dancing c. going dancing
 b. for going dancing d. to go dancing
22. Will her mother let her ... with to the party?
 a. go b. goes c. going d. to go
23. I enjoyed ... her again after all this time.
 a. seeing b. see c. to see d. it to see

24. She stayed ... in her room, refusing to come downstairs.
a. having locked c. locking
b. locked d. to being locked
25. She had a good practical knowledge of French ... as an interpreter for many years in France.
a. working c. worked
b. having worked d. to be worked
26. ... by his elbow, Mary listened to their talk.
a. supported c. having supported
b. supporting d. to be supported
27. ... their meal they went for a stroll in the park.
a. finishing c. having finished
b. finished d. to finish
28. Fruits ... in hothouses are not so rich in colour, taste and vitamins as fruits ... in natural conditions.
a. having grown/grown c. growing/having grown
b. grown/growing d. to grow/grown
29. The doctor wanted the patient ...
a. to examine c. being examined
b. to be examined d. examining
30. There are a lot of people who expect your country ... the same as their own.
a. not to be c. not to have been
b. not being d. having been
31. Did you hear the chairman ... an announcement?
a. to make b. making c. be made d. having made
32. When I was waiting in the hall, I saw a girl ... with a file in her hand.
a. came out b. to come out c. come out d. to have come out
33. Nobody expected the president of the company ... to the party.
a. coming b. to come c. come d. to be coming
34. He is considered ... a good musician.
a. to be b. to have been c. being d. having been
35. They are thought ... away some days ago.
a. to go c. to have been gone
b. to have gone d. going
36. James is expected ... a report next Wednesday.
a. to make b. to be making c. to have made d. making
37. Steve is known ... them to solve a problem when they were in trouble.
a. to help b. to have been helped c. to have helped d. helping

38. Mozart is known ... a lot of wonderful pieces of music.

- a. to compose
- b. to have composed
- c. to be composing
- d. composing

39. You had better ... her carry these suitcases

- a. help
- b. to help
- c. helping
- d. having helped

40. She was the first ... the homework.

- a. to finish
- b. finish
- c. finishing
- d. to having finished

REFERENCE

1. Василевская, Н. М. Практическая грамматика английского языка / Н. М. Василевская, М.А. Ганшина. – М. : Высш. шк., 1964. – 548 с.
2. Грамматика английского языка. Морфология. Синтаксис : учеб. пособие для студентов пед. ин-тов и уни-тов / Н. А. Кобрин [и др.]. – СПб. : Союз : Лениздат, 2000. – 496 с.
3. Грызулина, А. П. Практикум по грамматике английского языка для заочников : пособие для самостоятельной работы / А. П. Грызулина [и др.]. – М. : Высш. шк., 1992. – 159 с.
4. Гузеева, К. А. Грамматика английского языка. Герундий / К. А. Гузеева, С. И. Костыгина. – СПб. : Союз, 2004. – 336 с.
5. Гузеева, К. А. Инфинитив. Грамматика английского языка / К. А. Гузеева, С. И. Костыгина. – СПб. : Союз, 2000. – 320 с.
6. Каушанская, В. Л. Грамматика английского языка / В. Л. Каушанская [и др.]. – Л. : Просвещение, 1973. – 320 с.
7. Каушанская, В. Л. Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка / В. Л. Каушанская [и др.]. – Л. : Просвещение, 1973. – 139 с.
8. Крутиков, Ю. А. Упражнения по грамматике современного английского языка / Ю. А. Крутиков, И. С. Кузьмина, Х. В. Рабинович. – М. : Высш. шк., 1964. – 270 с.
9. Резник, Р. В. Практическая грамматика английского языка : учебник / Р. В. Резник, Т. С. Сорокина, Т. А. Казарицкая. – 4-е изд. – М. : Флинта : Наука, 1999. – 688 с.
10. Христорождественская, Л. П. Английский язык для среднего этапа обучения. Практический курс : в 2 ч. Ч. 1 / Л. П. Христорождественская. – Мн. : Плопресс, 1998. – 464 с.
11. Христорождественская, Л. П. Английский язык для среднего этапа обучения. Практический курс : в 2 ч. Ч. 2 / Л. П. Христорождественская. – Мн. : Плопресс, 1998. – 416 с.
12. Foley, M. Longman Advanced Learners' Grammar. A self-study reference and practice book with answers / M. Foley, D. Hall. – Harlow: Pearson Education Limited, 2003. – p. 384.
13. Walker, E. Grammar Practice for Upper Intermediate Students / E. Walker, S. Elsworth. – Harlow: Pearson Education Limited, 2000. – 204 p.
14. Vince, M. First Certificate Language Practice / M. Vince, P. Emmerson. – Oxford: Macmillan Publishers Limited, 2003. – p. 343.
15. Evans, V. FCE Usage of English for the revised Cambridge examination 1 / V. Evans. – Cambridge: Express Publishing, 1998. – 219 p.
16. Evans, V. FCE Usage of English for the revised Cambridge examination 2 / V. Evans. – Cambridge: Express Publishing, 2000. – 235 p.
17. Thompson, A. J. A Practical English Grammar Exercises 1 / F. J. Thomson, A. V. Martinet. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 1986. – 181 p.

18. Swan, M. How English Works. A Grammar Practice Book / M. Swan, C. Walter. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2002. – p. 358.

19. Vince, M. Advanced Language Practice / M. Vince. – Oxford: Publishers Limited, 2003. – 326 p.

Могилевский государственный университет имени А.А. Кулешова

CONTENTS

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ	3
VERBALS	4
The double nature of the verbals	4
The verbal characteristics of the non-finite verb forms	4
THE INFINITIVE	4
The double nature of the infinitive	4
The morphological features of the infinitive	5
The category of aspect and voice	5
The perfect and non-perfect forms	6
The use of the infinitive without the particle “to”	9
The syntactical functions of the infinitive	12
The infinitive as subject	12
The infinitive as predicative	14
The infinitive as part of a predicative	17
The infinitive as part of a compound verbal predicate	18
The infinitive as object	20
The infinitive as attribute	22
The infinitive as adverbial modifier	25
The infinitive as parenthesis	34
Infinitive Constructions	35
The objective with the infinitive construction	35
The subjective infinitive construction	40
The for-to-infinitive construction	45
Revision	52

PARTICIPLE I	54
The morphological categories of Participle I	54
Participle I as attribute.....	58
Participle I as predicative	61
Participle I as parenthesis	63
Participle I as adverbial modifier.....	64
a) adverbial modifier of time.....	64
b) adverbial modifier of cause(reason)	67
c) adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances and manner.....	69
d) adverbial modifier of comparison.....	71
e) adverbial modifier of concession	71
f) adverbial modifier of condition	71
The objective participial construction	74
The subjective participial construction	78
The nominative absolute participial construction	80
The prepositional absolute participial construction with Participle I.....	80
The nominative absolute construction.....	80
The prepositional absolute construction.....	81
 PARTICIPLE II	 84
Participle II as attribute.....	86
Participle II as predicative (part of a compound nominal predicate)	88
Participle II as adverbial modifier of time	88
Participle II as adverbial modifier of condition.....	88
Participle II as adverbial modifier of comparison	88
Participle II as adverbial modifier of concession	89
The objective participial construction with Participle II.....	90
The nominative absolute participial construction with Participle II	93
The prepositional absolute construction with Participle II.....	94
Revision.....	94
 THE GERUND	 101
The syntactical features of the gerund.....	101
The morphological categories of the gerund.....	102
The use of the gerund	104
The gerund as subject	107
The gerund as predicative.....	110
The gerund as part of a compound verbal predicate.....	111
The gerund as direct object.....	113
The gerund as prepositional object.....	119
The gerund as attribute	125

The gerund as adverbial modifier	129
a) adverbial modifier of time.....	129
b) adverbial modifier of reason	133
c) adverbial modifier of manner.....	135
d) adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances	138
e) adverbial modifier of concession	140
f) adverbial modifier of condition.....	142
g) adverbial modifier of purpose.....	145
The gerund and the verbal noun compared	147
Revision	149
REVISION AND CONSOLIDATION	153
TEST	158
REFERENCE.....	162